



# COMPARATIVE STUDIES

CROSS-NATIONAL SUMMARIES

NUMBER 32      JUNE 1984

SUSHEELA SINGH

**Comparability of Questionnaires:  
Forty-one WFS Countries**

INTERNATIONAL STATISTICAL INSTITUTE  
Permanent Office, Director: E. Lunenberg  
428 Prinses Beatrixlaan, PO Box 950  
2270 AZ Voorburg  
Netherlands

WORLD FERTILITY SURVEY  
Project Director: Halvor Gille  
35-37 Grosvenor Gardens  
London SW1W 0BS  
United Kingdom

The World Fertility Survey (WFS) is an international research programme whose purpose is to assess the current state of human fertility throughout the world. This is being done principally through promoting and supporting nationally representative, internationally comparable, and scientifically designed and conducted sample surveys of fertility behaviour in as many countries as possible.

The WFS is being undertaken, with the collaboration of the United Nations, by the International Statistical Institute in co-operation with the International Union for the Scientific Study of Population. Financial support is provided principally by the United Nations Fund for Population Activities and the United States Agency for International Development. Substantial support is also provided by the UK Overseas Development Administration.

For information on Country Reports, WFS publications, and WFS depository libraries, write to the Publications Office, International Statistical Institute, 428 Prinses Beatrixlaan, PO Box 950, 2270 AZ Voorburg, Netherlands. For information on the WFS generally, write to the Information Office, World Fertility Survey, International Statistical Institute, 35-37 Grosvenor Gardens, London SW1W 0BS, UK.

L'Enquête Mondiale sur la Fécondité (EMF) est un programme international de recherche dont le but est d'évaluer l'état actuel de la fécondité humaine dans le monde. Afin d'atteindre cet objectif, des enquêtes par sondage sur la fécondité sont mises en oeuvre et financées dans le plus grand nombre de pays possible. Ces études, élaborées et réalisées de façon scientifique, fournissent des données représentatives au niveau national et comparables au niveau international.

L'EMF est entreprise, en collaboration avec les Nations Unies, par l'Institut International de Statistique, qui coopère avec l'Union internationale pour l'étude scientifique de la population. Le financement de ce programme est essentiellement assuré par le Fonds des Nations Unies pour les activités en matière de population et par l'Agence des Etats-Unis pour le développement international. Une contribution importante est aussi faite par le Département pour le développement des pays d'outre-mer du Royaume-Uni.

Pour toute information concernant les rapports d'enquêtes nationaux, les publications de l'EMF ou les bibliothèques dépositaires, écrire au Bureau des publications, Institut International de Statistique, 428 Prinses Beatrixlaan, BP 950, 2270 AZ Voorburg, Pays-Bas. Pour tous renseignements complémentaires sur l'EMF en général, écrire au Bureau d'information, Enquête Mondiale sur la Fécondité, Institut International de Statistique, 35-37 Grosvenor Gardens, Londres SW1W 0BS, Royaume-Uni.

La Encuesta Mundial de Fecundidad (EMF) es un programa internacional de investigación cuyo propósito es determinar el estado actual de la fecundidad humana en el mundo. Para lograr este objetivo, se están promoviendo y financiando encuestas de fecundidad por muestreo en el mayor número posible de países. Estas encuestas son diseñadas y realizadas científicamente, nacionalmente representativas y comparables a nivel internacional.

El proyecto está a cargo del Instituto Internacional de Estadística, contando con la colaboración de las Naciones Unidas y en cooperación con la Unión Internacional para el Estudio Científico de la Población. Es financiado principalmente por el Fondo de las Naciones Unidas para Actividades de Población y por la Agencia para el Desarrollo Internacional de los Estados Unidos. La Oficina Británica para el Desarrollo de Países Extranjeros proporciona también un gran apoyo financiero.

Puede obtenerse información sobre Informes de Países como otras publicaciones de la EMF y las bibliotecas depositarias, escribiendo a la Oficina de Publicaciones, Instituto Internacional de Estadística, Prinses Beatrixlaan 428, Casilla Postal 950, 2270 AZ Voorburg, Países Bajos. Si desea información de carácter general sobre la EMF, escriba a la Oficina de Información, Encuesta Mundial de Fecundidad, Instituto Internacional de Estadística, 35-37 Grosvenor Gardens, Londres SW1W 0BS, Reino Unido.

# **COMPARATIVE STUDIES**

## **CROSS-NATIONAL SUMMARIES**

### **Comparability of Questionnaires: Forty-one WFS Countries**

**SUSHEELA SINGH**

**WFS Central Staff**

**Editorial note**

The present publication is an extension of an earlier cross-national summary, 'Comparability of Questionnaires', published in 1980 as *WFS Comparative Studies* no 2. The present work supersedes the earlier publication.

The recommended citation for this publication is:

Singh, Susheela (1984). *Comparability of Questionnaires: Forty-one WFS Countries*. *WFS Comparative Studies* no 32. Voorburg, Netherlands: International Statistical Institute.

Printed in Great Britain at the Alden Press  
Oxford London and Northampton

# Contents

PREFACE	7
<b>1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>2 THE HOUSEHOLD SCHEDULE</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>2.1 Essential questions</b>	<b>10</b>
Relationship to head	10
Residence	10
Sex and age	10
Marital status	13
Probes to ensure complete coverage of household members	13
<b>2.2 Recommended questions</b>	<b>14</b>
Education	14
Fertility	14
Mortality	14
Possession of modern objects	14
Source of water supply	15
Toilet facilities	15
Source of lighting	15
Source of energy for cooking	15
Housing characteristics	15
Language, religion, nationality and ethnicity	17
<b>2.3 Additional questions</b>	<b>17</b>
Employment	17
Migration	17
Agriculture	18
Public health	18
<b>3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC CHARACTERISTICS OF RESPONDENT AND HUSBAND</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>3.1 Social characteristics of respondent and husband</b>	<b>19</b>
Usual current place of residence	19
Place of residence in the past	19
Respondent's date of birth	24
Age of husband	24
Education of respondent and husband	24
Literacy of respondent and husband	26
Religion of respondent and husband	26
Ethnicity	27
Nationality	27
Language	27
Media exposure	28
<b>3.2 Employment characteristics of the respondent</b>	<b>28</b>
Definition of work	28
Currently working	28
Employment before or after marriage	28
Year last worked since first marriage	29
Occupation since first marriage	29
Work on family farm	29
Location of work: home or away (Q607)	29
Work status (Q608)	31
Paid in cash or kind (Q609)	31
Years worked since first marriage	32
Whether worked in first birth interval and other intervals	32
Whether worked before first marriage	32

Occupation, work status and type of payment before first marriage	32	Whether visited in last 12 months?	70
Questions on added topics	33	Last place visited in preceding 12 months	70
<b>3.3 Husband's employment</b>	34	<b>8.6 Satisfaction with treatment</b>	71
Occupation	34	<b>8.7 Intention to visit again</b>	71
Work status	34	<b>8.8 Whether considered attending a source of family planning advice or supplies</b>	71
Paid in cash or kind	34	<b>8.9 Details of last method used</b>	71
Number of employees	35	<b>8.10 Added country-specific topics</b>	72
Additional questions on husband's employment	35	Problems with getting supplies	72
		Problems with method itself	72
		Family planning activities	72
<b>4 MATERNITY HISTORY</b>	36		
<b>4.1 Structure of birth history</b>	36	<b>9 FACTORS OTHER THAN CONTRACEPTION AFFECTING FERTILITY</b>	74
<b>4.2 Number of live births</b>	36		
<b>4.3 Birth history</b>	37	<b>9.1 Menstruation characteristics</b>	74
Dating of births and deaths	37	Age at first menstruation	74
<b>4.4 Whether pregnant at time of interview</b>	43	Duration and frequency of periods	74
<b>4.5 Non-live births</b>	43	Menopause	74
Influence of birth history structure	43	<b>9.2 Sexual intercourse</b>	76
Dating of non-live births	44	<b>9.3 Temporary absences</b>	76
Duration of pregnancy and signs of life at birth	44	Base population	77
Induced abortions	44	Variations in questions	77
		<b>9.4 Breastfeeding</b>	77
<b>5 MARRIAGE HISTORY</b>	45	Omissions	78
<b>5.1 Marital status</b>	45	Additions	78
<b>5.2 Probe on status of the currently married</b>	45	<b>9.5 Post-partum abstinence and amenorrhoea</b>	78
<b>5.3 Cohabitation</b>	48	<b>9.6 Height and weight measurements</b>	79
<b>5.4 Dating of beginning and ending marriages/unions</b>	49		
<b>5.5 Polygamy</b>	50	<b>10 INFREQUENTLY USED MODULES</b>	80
<b>5.6 Additional questions</b>	50		
		<b>10.1 Cost and benefits of children</b>	80
<b>6 KNOWLEDGE AND USE OF CONTRACEPTION</b>	51	Costs of children	80
<b>6.1 Knowledge and ever-use of contraception</b>	51	Benefits from children	80
Format of questions	51	<b>10.2 Health care</b>	81
Omission and addition of methods	51	Medical attention during the last pregnancy	81
Treatment of sterilization	55	Medical attention at and after childbirth	82
Final probe question on use of contraception	55	Medical care of infant	83
<b>6.2 Abortion</b>	55	Other questions	83
<b>6.3 Current use of contraception</b>	57	<b>10.3 Sexual relations history of the past year</b>	83
<b>6.4 Use in the open interval</b>	57	<b>10.4 Husband's survey</b>	84
Basic questions and base populations	57		
Added questions – why stopped and duration of use	57	<b>11 COMMUNITY-LEVEL MODULE</b>	85
<b>6.5 Use in the closed interval</b>	59		
Questions and base populations	59	<b>11.1 Transportation</b>	85
Duration of use	60	<b>11.2 Communications</b>	86
<b>6.6 First use of contraception</b>	60	<b>11.3 Government and other institutions</b>	88
<b>6.7 Intention to use in the future</b>	60	<b>11.4 Health facilities and health</b>	89
		<b>11.5 Family planning services</b>	91
<b>7 PREFERENCES FOR CHILDREN</b>	62	<b>11.6 Education</b>	91
<b>7.1 Fecundity status</b>	62	Primary, intermediate and secondary schools	91
<b>7.2 Whether wanted additional children</b>	62	<b>11.7 Agriculture</b>	92
Basic questions and base population	62	Labour force composition	92
Added questions on the topic of wanting more children	64	<b>11.8 Aspects of development</b>	95
<b>7.3 Wanting the last birth</b>	65	<b>11.9 Other topics</b>	97
<b>7.4 Total number of children desired</b>	66	Traditional customs concerning breastfeeding, abstinence, contraception, abortion and female circumcision	98
Ever-married women	66		
Never-married women	66	<b>APPENDIX A – AIDS TO DATING EVENTS</b>	99
<b>8 FAMILY PLANNING MODULE</b>	67	<b>TABLES</b>	
<b>8.1 Possession of contraceptives</b>	67		
<b>8.2 Method specific source questions</b>	67	<b>1 The standard household schedule</b>	11
<b>8.3 Nearest family planning source</b>	67		
<b>8.4 Knowledge of any source</b>	69	<b>2 Use of essential questions of the household schedule and of recommended questions on education, fertility and mortality</b>	12
<b>8.5 Visits to sources</b>	69		
Ever been to source	70	<b>3 Use of questions on housing characteristics and possession of modern objects</b>	16
<b>4</b>			

4	Core questionnaire section on characteristics of the respondent	20	17	Use of questions on preferences for children	63
5	Core questionnaire section on the respondent's work history	21	18	Use of questions on sources of family planning advice and supplies	68
6	Core questionnaire section on the background characteristics of the husband or partner	22	19	Use of factors other than contraception that affect fertility (mainly from FOTCAF module)	75
7	Use of questions on residence, age, education, literacy, religion, ethnicity, nationality and language, for respondents and husbands	23	20	Community module: questions on transportation (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)	86
8	Use of standard questions on respondent's employment and on husband's last job	30	21	Community module: questions on communication (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)	87
9	Core questionnaire section on the maternity history	38	22	Community module: questions on institutions (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)	88
10	Use of questions to obtain history of live births and history of 'other' pregnancies	42	23	Community module: questions on health facilities and health (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)	90
11	Core questionnaire section on the marriage history	46	24	Community module: questions on availability of family planning services	92
12	Use of questions to obtain data on marriages and unions	47	25	Community module: questions on education (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)	93
13	Core questionnaire section on knowledge and use of contraception	52	26	Community module: questions on agriculture (only rural communities eligible for these questions)	93
14	Questions on knowledge and ever-use of specific methods of contraception	54	27	Community module: questions on various aspects of development of the community (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)	95
15	Questions on approval of abortion under specific conditions	56			
16	Use of questions on current use, open interval use, closed interval use, timing of first use and intention to use in the future	58			

# Preface

One of the main objectives of the WFS programme is the collection and dissemination of internationally comparable data on human fertility, obtained through nationally representative interview surveys carried out in a large number of countries. Many institutions and research workers at international and national levels are engaged in cross-national comparative analysis of the data collected. The WFS London headquarters also undertake comparative analysis such as cross-national summaries.

The cross-national summaries present basic results from WFS surveys in developing countries on a wide range of topics. These summaries are published in the *WFS Comparative Studies* series.

A first group of cross-national summaries based upon 19 countries for which the First Country Report and standard recode tapes were available early in 1980 has been completed with the publication of seventeen issues (*WFS Comparative Studies* nos 1–15, 17 and 19). A second group, covering 28 developing countries, and including African countries for the first time, is also now nearing completion.

Several of the cross-national summaries are concerned solely with providing detailed and systematized information on the comparability, or lack thereof, of the field procedures, survey characteristics, questionnaire content and wording and content of the First Country Reports (*WFS Comparative Studies* nos 1–4, 5, which is in pre-

paration, and 16). Such detailed appraisals constitute an essential reference base for anyone using WFS data for comparative analysis.

Other cross-national summaries present comparable results from as many surveys as possible on a wide range of specific topics. Each summary provides, in addition to tabular material, a brief accompanying text, which draws attention primarily to any non-comparability of the data and to any obvious interpretational pitfalls to which the tables may be subject. Furthermore, although these summaries are not intended to be analytic in their orientation, some brief highlighting of the major noteworthy differences and similarities is included.

The cross-national summaries are intended to assist analysts and policy-makers by providing a ready tool for comparison of data between countries, but at the same time they draw attention to the limits, if any, of such comparability. It is intended to update some of these two groups of summaries to cover all developing countries which participated in the WFS programme.

The present report is part of this final series, and updates report no 2, covering all 41 countries where surveys were completed. As a comparison of the contents of questionnaires for these 41 countries, it is a necessary reference base for comparative analysis of WFS surveys.

HALVOR GILLE  
Project Director



# 1 Introduction

The objectives of the World Fertility Survey have been defined in the following terms:

The World Fertility Survey (WFS) is an international population research programme whose purpose is to assist a large number of interested countries, particularly the developing countries, in carrying out nationally representative, internationally comparable, and scientifically designed and conducted surveys of human fertility behaviour.

In meeting this objective the WFS prepared a set of basic documents to guide countries in carrying out their surveys. Included among these was a core questionnaire for developing countries and a set of modules on special topics not included in the core questionnaire — abortion, factors other than contraception, family planning, mortality, community-level variables and economic variables. From the experience of the early surveys, alternatives to some questions, and re-wording of a few questions arose, and were published as modifications to the core questionnaire in 1977.

The core questionnaire, as its name suggests, was designed to collect the data that are most essential for fertility analysis. Countries could limit themselves to this core, and still cover the most important areas, but at the same time there was wide scope for adding special topics, some of which were covered by the modules.

Participating countries were not necessarily expected to follow the wording and structure of the core questionnaire exactly, but they were expected to collect the information sought in the core, in a form that would retain some degree of comparability between countries. It was also expected that some countries would expand the questionnaire to include topics of local interest.

Given that countries did modify and add to the core to fit local conditions, the question of comparability with the core questionnaire, and comparability among countries, becomes important. For the purpose of basic comparative analysis it is important to know whether in fact countries departed from the recommended core; and for the purpose of specialized research on particular topics it is necessary to know which countries used modules, parts of modules, or other local variables.

This paper summarizes departures from the core questionnaires (individual and household), departures from modules and the addition of questions not contained in the core or in the modules, for the 41 completed surveys. A comparison of community questionnaires is also done for the minority of countries which used one. The 41 WFS surveys comprise 12 in Africa, 10 in Asia and the Pacific, 4 in the Caribbean, 1 in Europe, 9 in Latin America and 5 in the Middle East. Surveys associated with the WFS survey such as multiround household surveys (in Benin) or husbands' surveys (in Thailand, Ivory Coast and Egypt) or household economic surveys (in Egypt and Thailand) are not covered as thoroughly as are fertility surveys. These related surveys are usually administered separately, and occasionally funded by a different donor. In addition, the data are typically not available from WFS but on tapes which would need to be matched with the fertility survey to be used jointly in analysis. However, we will mention the existence of these additional data, where relevant in the report.

The organization of this summary is only roughly based on questionnaire structure. To some extent main topics are used as a means of organizing the discussion. For example the topic of Socio-Economic Characteristics covers three sections of the questionnaire, the respondent's background, her work history and the husband's background. The use of questions by countries is summarized in the form of tables, but the text discussion is necessary for cases where additional information is obtained, or to explain cases where the question is not comparable with the core. Apart from the discussion of comparability of questions, the details of coded groups are given where they vary from country to country. More minor variations in codes are not discussed here, however. It is also necessary to remind users of the data from these surveys that not all the information obtained was transferred from the raw data tapes to the standardized, recoded data tapes which are distributed to users. Although the intention of the World Fertility Survey is to achieve this aim, it will be some time before that is done. In the meanwhile the questionnaires, as described here, are contained in the raw data tapes.

## 2 The Household Schedule

The core household schedule contains two groups of questions: one that was considered essential and another that was desirable. The essential group was needed to determine eligibility of women for the individual interview, and to provide the base for calculation of population rates. The recommended questions covered a wide variety of topics – ranging from education, fertility and mortality to possession of modern objects, housing conditions and facilities and agricultural activities.

We will first discuss use of the essential questions; secondly, use of recommended questions; and finally, additional country-specific questions.

### 2.1 ESSENTIAL QUESTIONS

These deal with the name, relationship to head, residence (*de facto* or *de jure* or both), sex and age (how many years old) and marital status of each member of the household (see table 1 for the actual questions). Most countries asked all these questions, but there were a few variations. Table 2 which summarizes the questions asked by each country shows the exceptions.

#### Relationship to head

In regard to relationship, although a quasi-schedule layout was used for the household questionnaire in some cases, and at best a brief question was asked in others, full instructions were given in training and in the interviewer's manual as to how relationships should be recorded. The data obtained were supposed to be sufficient to ascertain the generation of all members, whether they were married to some other member (couple code) and whether their mother resided in the household (the mother's line was coded). Countries which did not have on the questionnaire the brief question 'What is the relationship of this person to the head of the household?' were Benin, Cameroon, Egypt, Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho, Nigeria, Portugal and Thailand; instead, they simply indicated that 'relationship' was to be entered. Two countries, Turkey and Mauritania, specifically asked if the person's mother was living in that household and, if so, recorded her line number. However, while all countries followed the core in obtaining relationship, it does not follow that the three variables mentioned above (generation, couple code and mother's line) were always extracted and coded on the household tape.

#### Residence

The next two questions, on whether the member usually lived in the household and whether he/she slept in the household last night, were asked to yield the *de jure* and *de facto* base populations. The use of the word 'usually'

will, in most cases, cause no problem. However, where a problematic case arose the instructions given to the interviewers were to ask if the person is considered by the respondent as 'living at this address these days'. Countries could, of course, introduce their own definition of usual residence, and some did so. For example, in Indonesia, where only the *de jure* residents were recorded, they had to be resident in the household for six or more months, to be counted as usual residents. Similarly, in the Philippines, only residents were recorded, and in addition, a question was asked on whether each person lived in the household before 1 August 1977. Only those who were resident before that date were counted as *de jure* members, and since interviewing took place from February to June 1978, this amounted to residence for 6–10 months or more, depending on the date of interview. Several countries, ie Costa Rica, Mexico, Turkey and Venezuela, used only the *de jure* definition, typically simply asking for the names of all usual residents, with no further explanation of 'usual' and no further confirmatory questions on durations of residence.

Egypt asked for the names of usual residents and then asked the confirmatory question on whether this person usually lived in the household. Guyana and Trinidad & Tobago fit the Costa Rican type except that household members were counted as *de jure* residents if they either usually lived in the household and shared at least one daily meal with the household, or if they had recently come to live with the household, and intended to remain for at least three months as household members. Ecuador also did not directly ask whether the person usually lived or slept last night, in the household. Again only the names of 'usual' residents were requested, but interviewers were instructed on the questionnaire not to forget to include those temporarily absent for 30 days or less, for vacation, sickness, work, etc. Benin and Senegal classified usual residents as present or absent, and obtained the period of time absent, or the length of time visitors had been in the household, which was necessary for a *de jure* classification of members since the household was a reporting unit and would be the base for rates using events occurring during the periods between visits of the three-round surveys.

#### Sex and age

The next two recommended questions were to obtain the sex and age of each member. The core question for age was 'How old is he/she?' and while 25 countries asked it exactly as recommended, variations or additions were used in the others. Interviewers were instructed to obtain age in completed years, but a few countries (Fiji, Philippines, Thailand and Trinidad & Tobago) went further and specified 'age at last birthday' in the question. Bangladesh specified age in completed years, although age was only asked if the date of birth, which was asked first, was not known. Cameroon also

**Table 1** The standard household schedule

Now we would like some information about the people who ordinarily live in your household, or are staying with you now.

NAMES OF USUAL RESIDENTS AND VISITORS	RELATIONSHIP	RESIDENCE		SEX	AGE	EDUCATION		MARITAL STATUS: FOR THOSE AGED — AND OVER	
		Does this person usually live here?	Did this person sleep here last night?			Has (he/she) ever been to school?	IF YES: What was the highest level and year of schooling (he/she) completed?	Has (he/she) ever been married?	IF YES: Is (he/she) now married (M) widowed (W) divorced (D) or separated (S)?
(1)	(2)	Y/N	Y/N	M/F	(6)	Y/N	(8)	Y/N	(10)
01									
02									
03									
04									
05									
06									
07									
08									
09									
10									
11									
12									

FERTILITY: FOR ALL WOMEN AGED — YEARS AND OVER														ELIGIBILITY
NUMBER OF LIVE BIRTHS						PARTICULARS OF HER MOST RECENT LIVE BIRTH			FERTILITY RESPON- DENT:	TICK ALL WOMEN ELIGIBLE FOR INDIVI- DUAL INTERVIEW				
SUM						In what month and year did her last birth occur?	Was that a boy or a girl?	Is that child still living?	GIVE LINE NUMBER OF PERSON ANSWER- ING COLUMNS 11 - 21					
S (11)	D (12)	S (13)	D (14)	S (15)	D (16)						MONTH (18)	YEAR (19)	B/G (20)	Y/N (21)

IF CONTINUATION SHEET USED, TICK HERE:

Just to make sure I have a complete listing:

- Are there any other persons, such as small children or infants, that we have not listed?  
YES  (ENTER EACH IN TABLE) NO
- In addition, are there any other people who may not be members of your family, such as domestic servants, friends or lodgers who usually live here ?  
YES  (ENTER EACH IN TABLE) NO
- Do you have any guests or visitors temporarily staying with you ?  
YES  (ENTER EACH IN TABLE) NO



asked the date of birth first and age was obtained only if the date was unknown. While Guyana asked the core question on age, the result was coded in broad age groups (0–14, 15–49 and 50+) rather than by single years, thereby destroying comparability.

Senegal recorded the year of birth, though if this was not directly given age was obtained and year calculated from it. Portugal also obtained somewhat more exact information than the recommended, by asking for the age in months, of children under two and so did Mauritania for children under three years. Several countries – Benin, Ghana, Kenya, Korea, Malaysia, Nigeria, Philippines, Sri Lanka and Thailand – asked for both items, the date of birth and the age (using the usual question) for everyone. Turkey obtained the year of birth and age for all household members.

The use of a historical calendar, of aids in estimation, such as age at marriage or the age of a person's children, etc and of any documents available, such as birth certificates, or identification cards, was recommended in instructions to interviewers, especially where it was difficult to establish ages. Some countries relied on these more than others but doubtless their use was common to all countries, although the extent of use is unknown. A few countries added more extensive probing for the age of females above age 10 (Ghana and Kenya) or above age 13 (Senegal) because of the importance of identifying eligible women correctly. In the cases of Ghana and Kenya, the date of birth was asked first, and age was also asked of everyone, with inconsistencies of over one year being probed and corrected. If the date and age were not known, documents would be requested, and if these were also not available, the historical calendar or list of events would then be used to help in estimating age. This list would be used jointly with the usual events such as marriage, age of children, etc in making an estimate. Other members could also be consulted on knowledge of the woman's age. Finally, as in the case of Nigeria, if no estimate could be reached by these means, an estimate would have to be made on the basis of appearance. Senegal also had detailed probing for the year of women's birth, using an AGEVEN (age–event) chart, obtaining all births, probing intervals for pregnancies, entering dates of marriages and used these data to reach an estimate. Official documents were also consulted, but were accepted only for the urban population or the young rural population born after 1960. The year of birth of all males and of females under 13 were estimated using only the historical calendar.

### Marital status

This was an essential question, where only ever-married women were selected for the detailed individual interview, since it was one criterion for eligibility of women for the interview. It was not needed if the individual survey included all women within the eligible age range. Two core questions were recommended, first whether the member was ever married and, if so, what was the current marital status. Most countries asked both questions (30 did so) while another five obtained the equivalent information, by asking only the question on current marital status. Although 20 countries interviewed all women in their individual surveys, only six chose the option of omitting all questions on marital status (Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Guyana, Jamaica

and Trinidad & Tobago). Mexico and Peru reversed the order of the two questions, asking the question on current status of everyone, then using the question on ever marriage only as a probe for those currently single. The Ivory Coast used slightly more intensive probing, and Thailand obtained the age at marriage of both men and women, in addition to the usual questions.

Coding of marital status varied according to the culture of countries. All Spanish-speaking countries and Portugal added a code for 'consensual union'.

A further addition was made in Mexico to split the legally married according to the type of marriage (by law and church, only law, only church). Haiti not only enlarged the core question to "... ever in married, common law or any other union" but coded current status in detail as *rinmin*, *fiancée*, *viv-a-vek*, *placée*, married, separated, divorced, widowed and single. Sri Lanka and Bangladesh added a group 'married, not consummated'.

The minimum age for asking marital status varied. About half of the countries which asked about marital status used the recommended age 15, and those included Portugal and a few Asian and African countries, Ivory Coast, Lesotho, Morocco, Tunisia, Fiji, Korea, Nepal and all Spanish-speaking countries except Ecuador. Other countries used a lower minimum age: Bangladesh (8); Indonesia, Pakistan, Philippines, Syria and Yemen AR (all 10); Benin, Ecuador, Egypt, Mauritania, Sudan, Sri Lanka, Thailand and Turkey (all 12); and Jordan's minimum was age 13. A few countries specified no minimum age, but presumably interviewers themselves asked the question as appropriate (Cameroon, Haiti, Malaysia and Senegal).

### Probes to ensure complete coverage of household members

Three probes were also considered 'essential' to ensure the completeness of the list: probes for infants or small children; non-family members, such as domestic servants, friends, lodgers who usually live in the household; and guests or visitors temporarily in the household.

All countries used the first probe on small children excepting only Benin, Fiji and Senegal. The second probe on non-family members was omitted by Fiji and Senegal, and simplified by Benin (mentioning domestic servants only) and by Egypt, Sudan and Syria (not specifying servants, friends or lodgers). The third probe on temporary visitors was omitted or modified by several countries, mainly those which used a *de jure* definition for their individual surveys, and where this probe was therefore either not needed or, if used, included the relevant definition of usual residence. Venezuela, with a *de jure* individual sample, included this probe, in order to ensure that visitors did not appear as members. Senegal omitted this probe, although it used a *de facto* individual sample. Indonesia, Malaysia and Philippines added probes which would be relevant to a *de jure* definition, to determine whether any usual residents were temporarily away. In summary, Senegal was the only country to omit completely all probes in a written form. Fiji did not explicitly use any probes, but an instruction reminded interviewers to list all who were in the house last night, including usual members and temporary visitors, and also to include usual members who were temporarily absent.

## 2.2 RECOMMENDED QUESTIONS

### Education

As table 2 shows, 15 countries did not ask any questions on education. Of the rest which did, all obtained the usual information on level and years (see table 1), except Egypt, Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR. These three countries first asked if the member could read and write, and only those who could were asked about educational attainment; it is possible that a small proportion who went to school for a few years only may not be able to read and write. Egypt asked its questions in a separate household economic survey, and in addition to the questions described above, also obtained, for everyone aged 5–25, whether they had attended school, the number of years attended, if enrolled during 1979–80, at what level, and the amount paid for tuition as well as for other items. Ecuador and Turkey included a question on literacy, in addition to obtaining educational attainment for everyone.

### Fertility

The questions on fertility fall into two groups. The first set obtained the number of live births, by asking separately for sons and daughters living with the mother, living away and the number who had died, and confirming the total number. These questions may be asked of all women or of ever-married women, and usually a minimum age was applied. All women above the minimum age (varying from 10 to 15) were asked the full set of questions by five African countries (Benin, Cameroon, Lesotho, Mauritania and Morocco), Fiji, and two Latin American countries (Colombia and Dominican Republic), while Venezuela asked only the total number of live births. Some Latin American countries used these questions to cover those age groups which would not be included in the individual interview (Costa Rica, Panama, Paraguay and Peru). Several countries asked the full set of questions to ever-married women only: Morocco, Sudan, Korea, Jordan, Syria and Yemen AR. Overall only 14 countries asked questions of the full age range (either ever-married or all women) while four asked particular subgroups only.

The second set of questions obtained particulars of the last live birth of each woman in the defined populations (see table 2): the date, sex and whether the child still lived. All 18 countries which enquired about the total number of live births also asked about the last live birth, in all cases for the same population. Most asked all three questions, but the Dominican Republic omitted sex of the child and whether alive, while Venezuela omitted sex of the child only. Three additional countries asked some questions on births in the recent period before the survey: Mexico, for the last 12 months; Philippines for the calendar year 1977; and Senegal for the periods between the three household visits.

### Mortality

The general mortality module suggested the addition of three groups of questions to the household schedule:

- (a) survivorship of the person's father and mother, and whether this person was the eldest living child of his father or mother;

- (b) whether the member was married more than once, and if so, whether the *first* wife or husband was still living;
- (c) the interviewer was asked to record, for each member of the household who died in the last 24 months, the member's name, relationship to the head, sex, age at death, and date of death (month and year).

Eight countries asked the group (a) questions exactly as recommended (Lesotho, Mauritania, Sudan, Morocco, Korea, Jordan, Syria and Yemen AR), while three others (Benin, Cameroon and Peru) asked only whether each parent was alive, but not the second question on eldest child. The Dominican Republic asked only if the mother was living.

The second set of questions on widowhood, group (b), asked whether ever-married members had been married more than once and, if so, whether their first wife/husband was alive. For those who had been married only once the question on current marital status would in any case determine whether the person was widowed. Only six countries asked these questions: Lesotho, Morocco, Sudan, Jordan, Syria and Yemen AR. Peru, however, obtained partial information; in the individual interview ever-married women aged 15–49 whose first marriage had ended in divorce or separation were asked the survival status of their first husband.

The third set of questions asked for the sex, age at death and date of death of all members who died in the past 24 months. All eight countries which asked about orphanhood also asked this set of questions. In addition a few other countries collected the same data, but for a period of different length: Benin and Senegal asked these questions on the periods between the three rounds of the household survey, and Benin asked the usual set on the past 24 months as well, but these data are part of the larger demographic survey from which the WFS individual sample was selected. Cameroon and Mexico asked these questions about the last 12 months while Philippines did so for the year 1977. Mauritania, one of the seven countries which used most of the module, phrased the question to cover the period since the coup d'état which re-instated Ould Dadah (10 July 1978), which was approximately 24 months before the period of interview. Mexico and Mauritania probed for the deaths of small children. Philippines and Cameroon also asked for the place of death.

### Possession of modern objects

Nineteen countries asked about some specific possessions (see table 3) and in addition, two others (Egypt and Thailand) obtained several of these items as part of their household economic surveys. Ownership of means of transport were asked about by the majority of countries:

Motor car & Motor cycle <sup>1</sup>	– CM, IC, EG, MO, NG, SD, BD, FJ, MY, LK, TH, GY, TT, EC, JO, SY, YM
Bicycle <sup>1</sup>	– CM, IC, EG, MO, SD, BD, FJ, KO, MY, LK, TH, GY, TT, EC, JO, SY

Sri Lanka also asked about possession of a lorry, tractor, and bullock cart, while it and Bangladesh asked about boats.

Sudan, Syria and Yemen asked about a taxi, and only Sri Lanka, Sudan and Syria about a van.

Possession of household consumer goods was also commonly asked:

Sewing Machine <sup>1</sup>	– CM, IC, EG, MO, NG, SD, BD, FJ, KO, MY, LK, TH, GY, TT, PA, JO, SY, YM
Radio <sup>1</sup>	– CM, IC, EG, MO, NG, SD, BD, FJ, KO, MY, LK, TH, GY, EC, MX, PA, JO, SY, YM
Television <sup>1</sup>	– IC, EG, MO, NG, SD, BD, KO, MY, TH, TT, PO, EC, MX, PA, JO, SY, YM
Fridge <sup>1</sup>	– CM, IC, EG, MO, NG, SD, BD, FJ, KO, MY, LK, TH, SY, TT, EC, MX, PA, JO, SY, YM
Telephone <sup>1</sup>	– EG, MO, SD, KO, MY, LK, PO, JO, SY, YM
Clock or watch <sup>1</sup>	– NG, BD, KO, MY, LK, TH, JO
Washing machine <sup>1</sup>	– SD, MY, EC, JO, SY, YM
Iron <sup>1</sup>	– BD, MY, EC, MX
Electric/gas cooker <sup>1</sup>	– CM, IC, EG, MO, FJ, LK, GY, TT, EC, PA, JO

A few countries asked about other country-specific objects. Mexico and Bangladesh included this topic in their individual questionnaire, but since it is household ownership which is at issue, those countries are included here.

#### Source of water supply

Eighteen countries asked a question on this topic (see table 3) and two others (Egypt and Thailand) also enquired about this topic in their separate household economic surveys. A few countries specified that the source of drinking/cooking water was needed (Egypt, Mauritania, Malaysia, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Jamaica, Panama and Jordan) but others asked a general question. The types of sources coded varied widely among countries, but typically the results would show whether piped water was available, sometimes distinguishing between availability within the household/building or outside of household either in the yard or further away, or whether some other source (distinguishing sometimes between pump, well, tank, rainwater, river, stream, lake, spring, sea) was used. Two countries further distinguished between public piped water and private piped water (Panama and Trinidad & Tobago), while two (Jamaica and Sri Lanka) asked whether the source of piped water was shared.

#### Toilet facilities

Fifteen countries asked a question on this subject (Egypt in its separate household economic survey), and again the codes varied among countries. Typically, countries distinguished between a flush toilet (connected to a sewer system or a septic tank), a latrine or no provision (sometimes broken down into river, open air). But Philippines simply asked whether the toilet was inside the house, outside or none, while Jordan asked only whether it was private or shared. In addition to asking the type, Ecuador and Panama asked whether the flush toilet was shared or private.

Morocco asked whether it was inside the house or not, and whether it was connected to a sewage system or not.

#### Source of lighting

Twenty countries asked a question on the type of lighting in the household (two, Egypt and Thailand, in separate household economic surveys). Ten countries distinguished only between having electricity or not (Egypt, Morocco, Nigeria, Fiji, Thailand, Jamaica, Portugal, Ecuador, Mexico and Venezuela), while most of the other countries had gas or kerosene as an additional source. Trinidad & Tobago also included candles, and Cameroon and Ivory Coast included petrol, oil and firewood. Ecuador, Malaysia and Philippines distinguished between electricity from a public or corporation generator, and from a private generator.

#### Source of energy for cooking

Only seven countries enquired about this topic. Most countries coded the sources as electricity, gas, kerosene, wood, other. Yemen AR added coal and Mexico grouped sources together: oil or kerosene, electricity or gas.

#### Housing characteristics

Nine countries asked about the type of housing, Egypt in its separate household economic survey. Countries may be classified into a few groups. Egypt, Korea, Sri Lanka, Trinidad & Tobago, Venezuela and Ecuador distinguish between a detached house, part of a house, or an apartment. Ecuador and Venezuela further add low quality dwellings (hut or shanty) and ranches, as categories, while Sri Lanka distinguishes between having independent access or not, and Trinidad & Tobago does so where the dwelling is part of a private house. Cameroon and Ivory Coast distinguish between traditional detached and modern detached dwellings and they also have the 'compound' as a category. Mauritania includes the tent and the 'baraque' as categories.

Nine countries asked about the type of material used to build the dwelling. This information was obtained in Thailand in its separate household economic survey. Morocco, Jordan and Yemen AR asked a general question about the whole house, while other countries asked about specific parts of the house (see table 3). Jordan and Yemen AR coded answers as stone, cement, brick, stone and mud (replaced by stone-brick and mud-brick in Yemen) – these seem to be based on the materials for walls. Ivory Coast and Cameroon used similar codes: wall – brick, wood, adobe, stone, thatch, other (Cameroon added 'carobot' = hard-board); roof – hard tiles (Cameroon coded corrugated iron separately), mud, thatch; floor – cement, wood, mud. Fiji asked only if the roof was thatched or not. In Mexico<sup>2</sup>, the interviewers recorded their observation of the predominant material used for the walls, floors and roof separately.

<sup>1</sup> CM = Cameroon, IC = Ivory Coast, EG = Egypt, MO = Morocco, NG = Nigeria, SD = Sudan, BD = Bangladesh, FJ = Fiji, KO = Korea, MY = Malaysia, LK = Sri Lanka, TH = Thailand, GY = Guyana, TT = Trinidad & Tobago, PO = Portugal, EC = Ecuador, MX = Mexico, PA = Panama, JO = Jordan, SY = Syria, YM = Yemen.

<sup>2</sup> Mexico asked these questions in the last section of the individual interview.

and the place he/she went to. Turkey collected a migration roster for the past eight years, for each member aged 8 or more, counting only places where the member stayed for six or more months. The duration of stay and the location of each place of residence was obtained. The place of birth was also asked.

### Agriculture

Only Korea and Sri Lanka asked questions about agricultural activity in the household questionnaire. Korea<sup>3</sup> asked if anyone in the household worked on a farm and, if so, sought to identify the person and asked whether the land farmed was owned, rented, both or whether the person was working for someone else. Korea also asked how much paddy and how much dry field land was owned and rented.

Sri Lanka also asked if anyone in the household did any farming and, if yes, how much land was cultivated and how much of this was owned by any household member. Sri Lanka then asked if any of the following crops were grown during Maha 1974/75, and how much land was used for each crop: chillies, onions, potatoes, vegetables, pulses, cereals other than paddy, tobacco, sugar cane and oil seeds.

All households (farming or not) in Sri Lanka were asked if anyone owned singly or jointly, or held under a state grant, any land which was rented to someone else, and if so, its area. Finally all households were asked if anyone owned any livestock or poultry and, if so, how many of each of the following: cattle, buffaloes, sheep, goats, pigs, poultry.

Two other countries, Mexico and Bangladesh, also asked a few questions on agricultural assets in the individual questionnaire. Mexico asked women whose husbands were self-employed farmers how many hectares of land their (current or last) husband farmed, what was their current/last job and their job at the time they were just married. Bangladesh asked the respondent whether she owned any

cows or buffaloes or sheep or goats, and if so, how many; the implication of the question probably is whether the household owned livestock. Women whose husbands worked in farming were also asked if he owned any land personally.

### Public health

Morocco was the only country to ask questions on the use of health services by households. The identity of the respondent for this section of the questionnaire was recorded and he was asked if he himself had been sick in the last 12 months, and if not, whether any member of the household had been sick. In either case, the type of illness was obtained. If there had been an illness, the respondent was asked who had been consulted, with the answer coded in detail according to which of four levels of the public health system was consulted, or whether a private doctor, a pharmacy, some other source or no one at all, had been consulted. In order to check on knowledge of the public health system, those who had been to one of the four types of centres were asked whether they had consulted the 'Formation Sanitaire', ie the public health system. Those who had not used it were asked why not. Users of the public system were also asked the name and address of the clinic or dispensary used, and interviewers checked to see whether they were using the one that covered their administrative quarter. Finally, users of the Formation Sanitaire were asked whether they were satisfied with the treatment there. Households where no one had been ill in the last 12 months were asked where they would go if someone were ill. This group, and those who had an illness but had not gone to the Formation Sanitaire, were then asked which was the centre covering their localities, and again the correctness of this answer was ascertained by the interviewer and coded. All were then asked the time, in hours and minutes, taken to walk to their branch of the Formation Sanitaire.

---

<sup>3</sup> Korea asked questions for each household respondent at the household interview. In addition, and at the end of the individual interview, for those women who were eligible but did not usually live in the household, the same questions (concerning their own household of usual residence) were again asked.



### 3 Socio-Economic Characteristics of Respondent and Husband

Three sections of the questionnaire were designed to obtain data on this topic: the first dealt with the respondent's current and childhood places of residence, her date of birth, and her educational attainment and literacy; the second the respondent's employment characteristics; and the third her husband's characteristics — education, literacy, childhood place of residence, age, and employment characteristics, asking about her last husband if she is not currently married.

In addition to these core topics, countries were recommended to include questions on other locally applicable background variables. Moreover, apart from these specific sections, other sections also occasionally contained questions on socio-economic characteristics. In this section of the report all questions on this general topic are brought together. Tables 4, 5 and 6 show the layout of the three core questionnaire sections mentioned above, and text tables will be used to summarize use of these questions.

#### 3.1 SOCIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF RESPONDENT AND HUSBAND

##### Usual current place of residence

The core questionnaire was designed for a *de facto* sample, which meant that all eligible women in the selected household who had slept there on the previous night were interviewed, regardless of whether they usually lived there or not. The core therefore included questions to determine the current residence of women who were not usual residents of the household. Women were asked whether they lived in that house, and if not, then the full address of their usual place of residence was ascertained. Most countries (29 out of the 41) in fact used the *de facto* questions. One country however, Turkey, asked this set of questions, but nevertheless used a *de jure* sample, while two countries, Paraguay and Portugal, used a *de facto* definition of eligibility but did not ask these questions to determine the usual residence of visitors.

Although the intention of the questions was to obtain the full address of visitors, not all countries followed this. Instead, a few (Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho and Nigeria) obtained the district (or region) and whether the place was rural, town or city. A few others (Jordan, Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR) simply recorded whether the visitor's usual place of residence was rural, town or city. In contrast Benin and Morocco not only recorded the full address of visitors, but also whether the place was urban or rural.

Countries which used a *de jure* definition for the sample, ie including only usual household residents, did not need these questions on residence — these countries were Indonesia, Philippines, Guyana, Jamaica, Trinidad & Tobago, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Mexico, Venezuela, Egypt and Turkey.

For both sets of countries, however, the interpretation of the variables on current residence — region and type of place — is the same, the usual place of residence.

##### Place of residence in the past

The core questionnaire recommended a question on whether the respondent had always lived in her present usual place of residence. Although the phrasing of the question varied ('since birth' instead of 'always' or how long lived in the place, with a code for always), almost all countries obtained this information — the only two exceptions were Nepal and Pakistan (see table 7). For four countries this information was only obtained indirectly; Mexico by collecting a detailed migration history, described below, and Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago by first asking the place of birth, and then asking how many years the respondent had lived in the place of birth.

The second recommended core question was intended to obtain the respondent's subjective impression of the type of place (countryside, town or city) that she had mainly lived in, up to about age 12, and which her husband had lived in, also up to the age of 12. In the case of the respondent, she was expected to be asked this question even if she had always lived in the same place. Table 7 shows that not all countries asked these questions, nor did all ask them comparably. Three countries completely omitted this question for both respondent's and their husbands (Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago), while a few others omitted it for husbands only (Fiji, Indonesia, Pakistan and Portugal). A few countries had small inconsistencies. Pakistan used the age of first marriage as the cut off point, and Philippines used age 15, while Ivory Coast and Mauritania simply used 'during your childhood' as the reference period, instead of 'up to age 12'. A more important difference arose in Cameroon, Nigeria, Senegal and Fiji, however, where the actual place of childhood residence was obtained and later objectively classified into type of place, for all women and men (Cameroon and Senegal), for women who always lived in the same place (Fiji) and for women who always lived in rural areas or cities (Nigeria). This means that in Fiji those who had not always lived in the same place were asked the usual question and, in Nigeria, the usual question was asked both of those who had not always lived in the same place and of those who had always lived in what is now a town. The usual question was also asked in regard to all partners in Nigeria. The non-comparability is therefore greatest for Senegal and Cameroon. Most countries used the recommended three-category coding, but a few used a simpler breakdown of rural and urban (Sri Lanka, Pakistan, Thailand, Malaysia, Fiji, Bangladesh, Lesotho and Nigeria) and a few added special codes: Sri Lanka and Malaysia (estate), Fiji (settlement), Sudan (badiah) and Jordan (desert).

**Table 4** Core questionnaire section on characteristics of the respondent  
**SECTION 1. RESPONDENT'S BACKGROUND.**

Location of interview (place name) \_\_\_\_\_

101. Do you live in this house?

YES  1

NO  2

102. Do you live in \_\_\_\_\_ (PLACE NAME)?

YES  1      NO  2

103. Where do you live?  
 (INTERVIEWER: OBTAIN PLACE NAME.)

104. Have you always lived in \_\_\_\_\_ (PLACE NAME)?

YES  1

NO  2

<p>105. What kind of area would you say (this, that) was when you were growing up, say to age 12? Was it countryside, a town, or a city?</p> <p>COUNTRYSIDE <input type="checkbox"/> 1      TOWN <input type="checkbox"/> 2      CITY <input type="checkbox"/> 3</p>	<p>106. In what kind of area did you live mostly when you were growing up, say to age 12? Was it in the countryside, in a town, or in a city?</p>
--	---

107. In what month and year were you born?

\_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_\_  
 (MONTH) (YEAR)

(SKIP TO 109)

D.K.

108. How old are you?  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 (RECORD BEST ESTIMATE)

3

1  2  4

5  7

9

10

11  13

14

15

16  18

20

109. Have you ever attended school?

YES  1

NO  2  
 (SKIP TO 113)

110. What was the highest level of school you attended - primary, secondary, or university?

PRIMARY  1      SECONDARY  2

UNIVERSITY  3      OTHER \_\_\_\_\_ (SPECIFY)

111. What was the highest (grade, form, year) you completed at that level?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

112. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX

LESS THAN 6 YEARS SCHOOLING <input type="checkbox"/>	6 OR MORE YEARS SCHOOLING <input type="checkbox"/> (SKIP TO 114)
--	---

113. Can you read - say a newspaper or magazine?

YES  1

NO  2

NOTE TO READER:

COUNTRIES ARE INVITED TO ADD QUESTIONS ON RELIGION AND RELIGIOUSNESS, ETHNIC GROUP, LANGUAGE, RACE, TRIBAL AFFILIATION, ETC., AS APPROPRIATE.

22

23

24

25

**Table 5** Core questionnaire section on the respondent's work history

**SECTION 6. WORK HISTORY**

601. As you know, many women work – I mean aside from doing their own housework. Some take up jobs for which they are paid in cash or kind. Others sell things, or have a small business, or work on the family farm. Are you doing any such work at the present time?

YES  1                      NO  2

602. Have you ever worked since the day when you were first married?

YES  1                      NO  2

(SKIP TO 613)

603. In what year did you last work?

19\_\_ (YEAR)

604. I would like to ask some questions about (your present work, the last work you did). What (is, was) your occupation – that is, what kind of work (do, did) you do?

605. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX

WORK (IS, WAS) FARMING  1                      WORK (IS, WAS) NOT FARMING  2

(SKIP TO 607)

606. (Is, was) that your family farm?

YES  1                      NO  2

(SKIP TO 610)                      (SKIP TO 609)

607. (Do, did) you work mostly at home or (do, did) you work mostly away from home in that job?

HOME  1                      AWAY  2

608. (Are, were) you employed by some member of your family, or by someone else, or (are, were) you self-employed?

FAMILY MEMBER  1                      SOMEONE ELSE  2                      SELF-EMPLOYED  3

(SKIP TO 610)

609. (Do, did) you get paid mostly in cash or mostly in kind?

CASH  1                      KIND  2                      UNPAID  3

9

1  2  4

5  7

9

10

11

13  15

16

17

18

19

20

610. About how many years in all have you worked since you first were married?

\_\_\_\_ (YEARS)

611. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX (SEE 211)

NO LIVE BIRTH  1                      ONE OR MORE LIVE BIRTHS  2

612. Did you work between the time you were first married and the birth of your first child?

YES  1                      NO  2

613. Now let us go back to the time before you were first married. Did you do any work at any time before you first were married?

YES  1                      NO  2

(SKIP TO 701)

614. For how many years altogether did you work before you first were married?

\_\_\_\_ (YEARS)

615. What kind of work did you do mainly, before you first were married?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

616. Were you employed by some member of your family, or by someone else, or were you self-employed?

FAMILY MEMBER  1                      SOMEONE ELSE  2                      SELF-EMPLOYED  3

(SKIP TO 701)

617. Did you get paid mostly in cash or mostly in kind?

CASH  1                      KIND  2                      UNPAID  3

21

23

24

25

26

28

30

31

32

**Table 6** Core questionnaire section on the background characteristics of the husband or partner  
**SECTION 7. CURRENT (LAST) HUSBAND'S BACKGROUND**

701. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX (SEE 402, 407)

<p>HAS BEEN MARRIED ONLY ONCE <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>HAS BEEN MARRIED MORE THAN ONCE <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>INTERVIEWER: ASK THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ABOUT R's "HUSBAND".</p>	<p>702. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX (SEE 401, 405)</p> <p>MARRIED AND LIVES WITH HUSBAND <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>SEPARATED, WIDOWED OR DIVORCED <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>INTERVIEWER: ASK THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ABOUT R's "PRESENT HUSBAND".</p>	<p>INTERVIEWER: ASK THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ABOUT R's "LAST HUSBAND".</p>
<p>703. Did your (present, last) husband ever attend school?</p> <p>YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1      NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2                  (SKIP TO 707)</p>	
<p>704. What was the highest level of school he attended – primary, secondary or university?</p> <p>PRIMARY <input type="checkbox"/> 1      SECONDARY <input type="checkbox"/> 2</p> <p>UNIVERSITY <input type="checkbox"/> 3      OTHER _____                  (SPECIFY)</p>	
<p>705. What was the highest (grade, form, year) he completed at that level?</p> <p>_____</p>	
<p>706. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX</p> <p>LESS THAN 6 YEARS SCHOOLING <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>6 OR MORE YEARS SCHOOLING <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>(SKIP TO 708)</p>	
<p>707. (Can, Could) he read – say a newspaper or magazine?</p> <p>YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1      NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2</p>	

708. In what kind of area did your (present, last) husband live mostly when he was growing up, say to age 12? Was it in the countryside, in a town or in a city?

COUNTRYSIDE  1      TOWN  2      CITY  3

709. Now I have some questions about your (present, last) husband's work experience. What (is, was) his occupation – that is, what kind of work (does, did) he do? (IF UNEMPLOYED OR RETIRED, ASK LATEST OCCUPATION)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

(IF NEVER WORKED, END INTERVIEW)

710. (Is, was) he employed by some member of his family, or by someone else, or (is, was) he self-employed?

FAMILY MEMBER  1      SOMEONE ELSE  2      SELF-EMPLOYED  3

(SKIP TO 712)

711. (Does, did) he get paid mostly in cash or mostly in kind?		
CASH <input type="checkbox"/> 1	KIND <input type="checkbox"/> 2	UNPAID <input type="checkbox"/> 3
(END INTERVIEW)	(END INTERVIEW)	(END INTERVIEW)

712. (Does, did) he have any regular paid employees in his business?

YES  1      NO  2  
 (END INTERVIEW)

713. How many regular paid employees (does, did) he have?

\_\_\_\_\_

(NUMBER)

(END INTERVIEW)

33

34

35

36

37

38     40

41

42

43

44

**Table 7** Use of questions on residence, age, education, literacy, religion, ethnicity, nationality and language, for respondents and husbands

Country	Current residence DJ = de jure DF = de facto	Respondent's past residence			Husband's childhood residence	Respondents		Husband's age		Education-respondent and husband				Respondent		Husband		Respondent	
		Always in current	Child-hood	Added quests		Date of birth	Age <sup>a</sup>	All	Curr. marr.	Ever in school	Level	Year	Literacy	Reli-gion	Ethni-city	Reli-gion	Ethni-city	Nationality	Language
<b>Africa</b>																			
Benin	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓*	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	✓*	✓
Cameroon	DF	✓	**	✓	**	✓*	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x
Ghana	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	x
Ivory Coast	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	✓*	x
Kenya	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓*	A	x	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	x
Lesotho	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	x	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Nigeria	DF	✓	**	✓	✓	✓*	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	x	✓	x	✓	x
Senegal	DF	✓	**	x	**	✓*	x	x	x	✓	x*	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	✓	x
Egypt	DJ	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	x
Mauritania	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	✓	✓
Morocco	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓*	B	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Sudan N	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	x	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Tunisia	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓*	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
<b>Asia and Pacific</b>																			
Jordan	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓*	B	x	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x
Syria	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	B	x	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Turkey	DF	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	A	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	x
Yemen AR	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Bangladesh	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	B	**	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x
Nepal	DF	x	✓	x	✓	✓	B	x	✓	✓	x*	✓*	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	x
Pakistan	DF	x	✓	x	x	✓	B	x	x	✓	x*	✓*	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	x
Sri Lanka	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	B	x	x	✓	x*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x
Fiji	DF	✓	**	✓	x	✓	A	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	x
Indonesia	DJ	✓	✓	✓	x	✓*	B	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	✓
Korea, Rep. of	DF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	A	x	x	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	x
Malaysia	DF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	B	✓	x	✓	✓*	x*	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	x	✓*
Philippines	DJ	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	x	x	✓	x*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	x	x	x	✓
Thailand	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	B	x	x	x*	x*	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	✓
<b>Americas</b>																			
Colombia	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Ecuador	DJ	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	x
Paraguay	DJ	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Peru	DF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Venezuela	DJ	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Costa Rica	DJ	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Dominican Rep.	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Mexico	DJ	x*	✓	✓	✓	✓	A	x	✓	✓	x*	✓*	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Panama	DF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	B	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	x	x	x	x	x
Guyana	DJ	x*	x	✓	x	✓	B	x	x	✓	✓	**	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x
Haiti	DF	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x
Jamaica	DJ	x*	x	✓	x	✓	B	x	x	✓	✓	**	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x
Trinidad & Tob.	DJ	x*	x	✓	x	✓	B	x	x	✓	✓	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x
<b>Europe</b>																			
Portugal	DJ	✓	✓	x	x	✓	A	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x

<sup>a</sup>A = Age asked of all women; B = age asked only if respondent did not know date of birth.  
 ✓ = Obtained data equivalent to core questions.  
 ✓\* = Obtained additional data and core information.  
 \*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with core.  
 x\* = Did not ask core question, but obtained equivalent data from other questions.  
 x = Omitted question altogether.

As indicated in table 7, a few countries asked additional questions, for the respondent only. Women who had not always lived in the same place were asked their actual place of birth (Panama, Peru, Korea) or their place of childhood residence (Indonesia, Turkey, Malaysia); the number of years lived in the current place of residence (Turkey, Korea, Fiji and Malaysia); and the place where they lived before moving to the current place (Korea and Turkey). Mexico and Cameroon covered all the above questions, since they obtained detailed migration histories, Cameroon for all places the respondent had lived in her whole life (the place, date arrived, duration stayed) and Mexico for up to 7 places, counting only places where the respondent lived more than 6 months (the place, up to what age lived there, how long lived there). Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago obtained for all women the actual place of birth (or country of birth, if foreign born) and the number of years lived in that place (or if foreign born, the number of years lived in the country they are currently in). Nigeria asked women who had not always lived in the place, but whose childhood residence was rural, whether they had lived in any town or city after the age of 12 and if so, how many years.

A few countries asked additional questions on the husband's residence. Mexico and Korea asked the place of birth and Turkey asked the place of childhood residence, while Mexico also asked only currently married women whether their husband lived anywhere else for periods of six or more months and, if so, the name of the previous place and the length of time lived there, as well as the duration he had lived in the current place of residence.

#### **Respondent's date of birth**

The recommended questions were 'In what month and year were you born?' and, for those who did not know the date, 'How old are you?' All countries obtained some estimate of date of birth or age for the respondent but many collected more information than the required minimum and several used additional techniques to aid estimation.

Fifteen countries asked the questions exactly as recommended, mainly the earlier surveys in Asia and Latin America/Caribbean. Twenty-six countries, mainly African, Middle-Eastern and Latin American surveys, obtained the age of all respondents in addition to asking their date of birth. A few of these separated the two questions, asking age in a totally different section of the questionnaire (Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Tunisia and Costa Rica). In many countries, interviewers were asked to compare the two (date and age) and resolve the difference with the respondent.

Some countries made use of historical calendars (Ghana, Kenya and Haiti), or dating (AGEVEN) charts (Benin, Ivory Coast, Nigeria, Mauritania, Morocco, Senegal, Sudan, Indonesia, Korea, Egypt, Jordan, Syria, Turkey and Yemen AR) as a means of estimating age, where the respondent did not volunteer an answer. In the case of the AGEVEN chart it was also a means of validating her age against the dates of other events. Examples of these aids are shown in appendix A. A few countries (Cameroon, Senegal, Tunisia, Haiti, Ivory Coast, Morocco and Malaysia) instructed interviewers in the questionnaire itself to ask for birth certificates or any other documents with their age. This may have been done in other countries as well, although a specific instruc-

tion was not given. A few countries coded the method of estimation – Benin, Cameroon, Nigeria and Turkey.

A few countries deserve special comments because of their unusual approaches to obtaining the date of birth or age of the respondent.

Morocco recorded both the date of birth that was on the document and the date that the document itself was obtained (as well as the type of document). The interviewer was instructed further to question women where these two dates were two or more years different, as well as to probe women who had not supplied a document, about their current age, and their date of birth. Ghana did not ask any questions if the respondent had been the person who supplied the information on the household questionnaire, where, as described in the previous section, a detailed set of probes were used for women – instead the data were transferred from the household schedule. In addition, for other cases, if the woman could not supply her own date of birth or age, again the information was taken from the age-probe sheet of the household schedule. Senegal, where detailed probing had also been used at the household interview, and the AGEVEN chart completed for each woman, also used a similar process. Women were still asked their date of birth, or to supply a document, at the individual interview, but this was compared with the information on the AGEVEN, which was corrected if necessary.

Women who did not give a date, a document or their age at the individual interview were asked to verify that the estimate of their age obtained at the household interview was correct. Senegal converted ages into year of birth using the AGEVEN chart, and only the year was coded, leaving the month blank, in such cases. Korea asked additional questions on the animal year of birth, whether the month of birth was of the solar or lunar calendar; if the month was not given then the season of birth was asked. Indonesia also asked for the type of calendar (Muslim, western or other) where the month had been given. Malaysia asked Chinese respondents the animal year of birth, Nepal used the Nepalese calendar, and Bangladesh allowed for English or Bengali dating.

#### **Age of husband**

A question on the age of the husband was added only in 1977, as a modification to the original core questionnaire. This in part explains why as many as 13 countries did not ask about the husband's age (see table 7). Of the 28 countries which did ask the question, eight obtained data from currently married women only (see table 7). Bangladesh asked once-married women only, regardless of whether they were currently married or not.

#### **Education of respondent and husband**

The core questionnaire suggested three questions on education, aimed at obtaining the total number of years the respondent had attended formal schooling: whether ever attended school; the highest level achieved (primary, secondary or higher); and the highest (grade, form or year) achieved at that level. All countries obtained data on this topic and each country used the same questions for respondents and husbands, simplifying the discussion. Some variations occurred, however, in the method of asking

questions, and in the levels of education used, as well as cases of added questions.

Several countries simplified the questions by not specifically asking what was the highest level, although this could be deduced from the total years in school. Nepal, Pakistan, Philippines, Sri Lanka and Thailand used this approach. Thailand also omitted the questions on if ever attended school, leaving it up to the interviewers to deduce and code this, at the same time as years of schooling. Malaysia asked only one question on the highest level, but again the interviewer was expected to obtain and code the total number of years spent in school. Indonesia, Korea, Syria, Sudan and Egypt used a variation on the recommended questions by either ascertaining whether the respondent had graduated from the highest level and, if so, asking the number of years (Korea) or ascertaining the highest certificate obtained, which is equivalent to completing the particular level, then asking what was the highest grade completed after this certificate (Egypt, Syria and Sudan). Mexico asked for the number of years completed at each level separately. Senegal and Mauritania specified French school, and only asked about levels and years at the highest level for those who had attended French (as opposed to Koranic) school.

In a number of countries the coding of levels varied from the simple four categories that were recommended (primary, secondary, university, other). In most cases the change was occasioned by the need to split the total primary and secondary levels into three, rather than two sections, the middle often overlapping the top section of what is usually understood to be primary, and the bottom end of the usual secondary level. But occasionally the usual secondary level is split into two, and in a few cases, country-specific levels are used:

Ghana	— primary; middle; secondary; commercial/technical; teacher's training (post-middle); university or advanced; specialist post-secondary training; other
Ivory Coast	— primary; 1st cycle general; 2nd cycle general; superior
Mauritania	— primary; secondary—1st cycle; secondary — 2nd cycle; tech or prof — 1st cycle; tech or prof — 2nd cycle; superior
Nigeria	— Koranic school; primary; middle or modern; secondary; university
Tunisia	— primary; intermediate; secondary, higher
Bangladesh	— primary; Madrasha; high school; college, university
Indonesia	— primary; junior high; senior high; academy; university; other
Korea	— primary; new middle; old middle; new high school; old high school; college; other
Ecuador, Peru	— primary; secondary; higher, not university; university; literacy centre

Mexico	— Primary, secondary or pre-vocational; preparatory or vocational; university (professional); other studies
Egypt	— primary; preparatory; secondary; above secondary; university or higher
Jordan	— elementary; preparatory; secondary; higher institute; university
Sudan, Syria	— no certificate; primary; preparatory; secondary; higher institute or university; other
Turkey	— primary; junior high; senior high; university; other
Yemen AR	— no certificate; primary; preparatory; secondary; higher institute or university; other.

Those more detailed classifications are converted to their equivalent years in school, when constructing the standard variable, total years of education.

In the case of the English-speaking Caribbean (Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago) a fairly serious non-comparability was introduced by asking the secondary or higher group only the highest certificate obtained, not the number of years spent at that level. These certificates were approximately converted to years of schooling by using the usual years taken to finish them, but this makes no allowance for repeated or skipped years.

Cameroon was unique in adding a preliminary statement to the questions on education, apparently designed to make it easier for respondents to admit that they had never attended school:

You know that schools have not opened in all parts of Cameroon at the same time. So, for one reason or another, some persons have not attended school. Have you ever attended school?

Several countries added a question on attendance at Koranic school. For three countries the question used was more as a probe, asking either those with less than six years' education (Tunisia) or those who had never attended school (Morocco and Nigeria) whether they had ever attended Koranic school. Malaysia asked what type of school had been attended, with the categories being exclusive (religious, non-formal and formal), but the number of years at religious or non-formal schools was also asked. Mauritania and Senegal asked all respondents if they had attended Koranic school, and the number of years, then also asked questions on attendance at French (or formal) school.

Indonesia added a question, asking those whose highest level was junior high or senior high school whether they had been in the vocational or general section. Several countries coded the actual diploma or degree attained, although no specific question was asked, and a few asked specific questions on diplomas/degrees. The Philippines asked university-level women what degree they obtained. Cameroon asked women of all levels except those who never attended school what was the highest diploma obtained whether they had any training for a profession and, if so, what was it, and what was their highest professional diploma. Nigeria asked everyone whether they had any other full-time education after completing their highest level and, if so, whether it was at commercial/secretarial,

technical, teacher's training or some other type; and also the number of years spent in this training. Benin and Ivory Coast asked everyone the same set of questions, with the types being teacher's training, agricultural, technical or professional and any other. Ghana obtained similar information by including commercial/technical, teacher's training and specialist post-secondary training as levels, with number of years at the level also being obtained.

#### Literacy of respondent and husband

The recommended question on literacy was 'Can you read — say a newspaper or magazine?', and the base population to be asked was everyone with less than six years' schooling. Only two countries completely omitted this question for respondents (Guyana and Jamaica), while these and two others (Fiji and Trinidad & Tobago) omitted the question for husbands.

Some variations from the recommended form occurred, however. A few countries asked a more restricted group than those with less than six years' education. Trinidad & Tobago only asked respondents who had never attended school, while Bangladesh, Colombia, Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Panama, Peru, Philippines and Thailand asked women with less than five years' education or grade 4 or less education. Some other countries widened the group to all who did not graduate from primary school (Indonesia and Korea) while several asked all with primary completed or less than primary (Benin, Egypt, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria and Portugal). The phrasing of the question was also occasionally varied: Thailand simply asked 'can you read?' without specifying a newspaper or magazine; Haiti, Mauritania and Senegal mentioned a book (as well as a letter or newspaper); Nepal mentioned only a letter, Indonesia 'a simple letter', and Ghana, Indonesia and Nigeria added 'in any language'.

Several countries also asked if the respondent (or husband) could *write*: Thailand (simply 'can write'); Fiji (if cannot read a newspaper or magazine, '... read and write in English?'); Indonesia ('... write in any language, a simple letter'); Egypt, Nepal, Syria and Turkey (a letter); Yemen and Sudan (a message). Three countries asked, in addition, about attendance at an adult literacy class (Ghana, Kenya and Nigeria); while Ecuador coded literacy centre as a level and asked how many years were spent at that level.

#### Religion of respondent and husband

This was the most commonly used of the optional variables: 25 countries asked some questions on the religion of the respondent and six asked about the partner. Countries which did not ask about religion were mainly Latin American, where the majority are Catholic, or countries where the majority were Muslim. Most countries obtained only the type of religion practised, and the codes used were as follows:

Benin	— traditional; Christian; Muslim; none; other
Cameroon	— Catholic; Protestant; Muslim; other
Ghana	— traditional; Christian; Muslim; no religion; other

Ivory Coast	— Catholic; Protestant; Harriste; Islamic; other
Kenya	— Catholic; Protestant or other Christian; Muslim; no religion; other
Lesotho	— Catholic; Anglican; LEC; other
Nigeria	— Christian; Muslim; traditional; no religion; other Christian and Muslim also asked denomination or church
Senegal	— Muslim; Catholic; Protestant; other
Sudan	— Muslim; Catholic; other Christian; other
Bangladesh	— Islam; Hindu; Christian; Buddhist; other
Fiji	— Catholic; Methodist; Christian — all other sects; Hindu; Islam; Sikh; other; no religion
Korea (only those who answered 'Yes' to 'Do you have a religion you believe in?' were asked this)	— Buddhist; Confucianist; Protestant; Catholic; other
Malaysia	— Muslim; Catholic; other Christian; Hindu; Buddhist; Buddhist and ancestor worshipper; free thinker or no religion; other
Nepal	— Buddhist; Islam; Hindu; other
Philippines	— Catholic; Protestant; Islam; other
Sri Lanka	— Buddhist; Hindu; Muslim; Christian; other
Thailand	— Buddhist; Islam; Confucianist; Christian; other
Guyana	— Catholic; Anglican; other Christian; Hindu; Muslim; other non-Christian; none
Haiti	— Catholic; Protestant; other
Jamaica	— Anglican; Baptist; Methodist; Moravian; Presbyterian/Congregationalist; Catholic; Church of God; other; none
Trinidad & Tobago	— Anglican; Baptist; Methodist; Presbyterian; Roman Catholic; Seventh-Day Adventist; other Christian; Hindu; Muslim; other non-Christian; none; NS
Panama	— Catholic; other
Egypt	— Muslim; Coptic; other
Jordan	— Muslim; Catholic; other Christian; other.

Those countries which also asked husband's religion (Fiji, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago) used the same codes as above for husbands.

A few countries probed the depth of belief or practise of religion further than simply asking what was the religion.



Korea asked those who had a religion they believed in how often they usually went to a church or temple (coded as at least once a week; at least once a month; a few times a year; less often). Philippines and Portugal asked how often respondents (and their husbands, in the case of Philippines) attended religious services, while Panama asked all whether they attended religious services, and Catholics only whether and how often they took communion. Malaysia and Panama asked the respondent how important was religion in her life, coding the response on a scale from very important to not at all important. Benin asked what religion the respondent was born into as well as the religion she practised.

### Ethnicity

Ethnic group or tribe was obtained by 14 countries for women and by five countries for husbands (see table 7). In a few cases language groups, obtained by some countries, covered ethnic origin as well (Mauritania and Benin). The codes used are country-specific, as follows:

Cameroon	— coded as 34 major groups
Ghana	— coded as 47 groups, but also regrouped as 8 major groups: Fante; Twi; other Akan; Mole-Dagbani; Ewe; Ga-Adangbe; Guan; other
Ivory Coast	— coded as 79 groups but regrouped as 13 major groups: Abe; Agni; Attie; Baoule; Ebrie; Bete; Krou; Guere; Malinke; Yacouba; Gouro; Koulango; Senoufo
Kenya	— coded as 42 groups, but also regrouped as 9 major groups: Kalenjin; Kamba; Kikuyu; Kisii; Luhya; Luo; Meru-embu; Mijiuenda; other
Nigeria	— coded as more than 30 major tribes in individual data file. Recoding not done yet
Senegal	— coded as 18 groups, but also can be regrouped as 5 major groups: Wolof; Poular; Mandingue; Serer; other
Fiji <sup>4</sup>	— Fijian; Indian; European; part European; Pacific islands; Rotuman; Chinese; other
Malaysia	— Malay; Chinese; Indian; other
Nepal	— Rai; Newar; Bhraman; Satar-Sunwar-Dhanwar; Mosar-Darai-Tharu; Chhetri; Tamang; Gunung; Nagar; Musalman; other
Philippines	— Tagala; Cebuana; Ilocana; Hilongga; Bicolana; Moslem; others
Sri Lanka	— Sinhalese; Sri Lanka Tamil; Indian Tamil; Sri Lanka Moor; other
Thailand	— Thai; Thai Chinese; Thai-Muslim; Chinese; Malaysian; Indian; other

<sup>4</sup>Obtained by interviewer observation, not by asking a direct question.

Guyana <sup>4</sup>	— African; East Indian; Amerindian; mixed; other
Trinidad & Tobago <sup>4</sup>	— African; Indian; mixed; other.

### Nationality

A few African countries asked about the nationality of the respondent (Benin, Ivory Coast, Mauritania and Senegal) and the first two also asked respondents whether their husband was from Benin or Ivory Coast respectively. Ivory Coast classified respondents simply according to whether they were Ivorian, from another African country, or some other country; those who were Ivorian were asked if they had been born in Ivory Coast and, if not, whether either their father or mother or neither, were Ivorian. The other three countries determined the specific nationality of those respondents who were not from the country concerned.

### Language

Nine countries asked a question on the language of the respondent, and Malaysia alone asked the same question in regard to husbands (see table 7). Four of the nine countries asked what was the language usually spoken at home (Indonesia, Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR). Thailand simply asked 'What language do you speak?' Benin, 'What national language are you most fluent in?' Mauritania, to Mauritians only, 'What is your mother tongue?' and Malaysia obtained the medium of instruction for all those who had ever attended school. The Philippines asked both for the language or dialect spoken as a child, and that used most frequently at present for conversation at home. For a few countries, data on ethnicity or tribe discussed above, or on the language in which the interview was carried out (eg in Nigeria), would also give some information, indirectly, on language. The codes used are as follows:

Benin	— Adja; Dendi; Fon; Bariba; Yoruba; Ditamari; other
Mauritania	— Hassania; Poular; Soninke; Wolof; Bambara; other
Sudan	— Arabic; other
Syria	— Arabic; other
Yemen AR	— Arabic; other
Indonesia	— Allowed multiple coding, the codes being: Bahasa; Indonesia; Javanese; Sundanese; Maduranese; Balinese; other
Philippines	— Tagalog; Cebuano; Iloco; Hiligaynon; Bicol; Moslem; other
Thailand	— Standard Thai; Northern Thai dialect; North-East Thai dialect; Southern Thai dialect; Malaysian; Cambodian; Vietnamese; Chinese; other
Malaysia	— Arabic; Malaysian; English; Chinese; Tamil; other.

## Media exposure

The Ivory Coast asked women whether they belonged to an association of women and, if so, which one (religious, community, AFS). The Philippines asked all literate women whether they usually got a chance to read the newspaper and whether it was every day, several times a week, once a week, less often, or never. Korea questioned all women as follows:

'How often do you usually listen to radio, or watch television, to get news and information?' (Coded: every day; few days per week; once in a while; never.)

Attendance at meetings of organizations, such as the Woman's Association, Mothers' Club, Home Life Improvement Club, etc and, if yes, frequency in past 12 months.

Women with primary education or higher, or literate women were also asked 'How often do you usually read newspapers to get news and information?'

### 3.2 EMPLOYMENT CHARACTERISTICS OF THE RESPONDENT

One section of the core questionnaire was devoted to this topic, with the aim of collecting data on work before the first marriage, on the most recent job since the first marriage, and whether worked during the first birth interval (see table 5). No attempt was made to obtain a full history of labour force activity, as the title of the section suggests (Work History). As table 8 shows, several countries, mainly in Africa and Latin America, which included never-married women in their survey asked this section of all women. For this group questions were phrased to refer to one point in time only, the most recent job, since there was no marriage as a reference point. Three countries which have essentially all-women samples (Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago) omitted this section for women who had never been in any union.

#### Definition of work

Interviewers were recommended to read out a lengthy statement, defining work, before asking the first question, to emphasize that any employment, even work on the family farm, or unpaid work was considered to be work:

As you know, many women work — I mean aside from doing their own housework. Some take up jobs for which they are paid in cash or kind. Others sell things, or have a small business, or work on the family farm. Are you doing any such work at the present time?

Only 26 countries used this definition exactly as recommended. Portugal had a relatively small deviation — the phrase 'aside from doing the housework' and the second sentence about payment in cash or kind were omitted. Colombia, Costa Rica and Peru used another variation, 'As you know, women work, apart from housework, at jobs for which they receive payment in cash or in kind. Are you currently working?', leaving out the last sentence which mentions work on the family farm, etc. Nepal reduced the statement to simply 'Aside from housework do you do any

other work?' and Haiti omitted the whole introductory statement, simply asking whether the respondent was working. Pakistan used the recommended statement, except that work on the family farm was deliberately omitted, an omission that carries through to other questions, as discussed below. Senegal used an abbreviated and modified statement. 'As you know, many women work, in addition to housework, to meet their needs.' Apart from omitting the detailed definition it is possible that the phrase 'to meet their needs' may be interpreted as necessarily having an economic need to work.

Benin replaced the usual question with a series of questions:

- Do you have a salaried job?
  - If no: Do you have an activity by which you earn money?
- Everyone is then further probed:
- Do you have a small business?
  - Do you work in agriculture (subsistence)?
  - Do you work in formal agriculture including animal rearing?
  - Do you work in fishing?
  - Is there any other work which you do?

If more than one type of work is reported, the respondent is then asked which occupied most of her time during the year. The intention of this series of questions is to find out about every type of work engaged in at the time of the survey. It is possible, however, that the first two questions, emphasizing earning money, may bias the respondent towards reporting only work that earned money, since nowhere else is there a statement that unpaid work or work for payment in kind is being considered.

Several countries specifically mention that it is employment for pay or profit (Ghana), cash or kind (Bangladesh), money (Fiji) or a wage or salary (Lesotho and Kenya) that the respondent should report. This introduces a major non-comparability with other countries. In addition Fiji and Kenya also omitted the whole of the usual introductory statement.

#### Currently working

The introductory phrase quoted above was followed by a question 'Are you doing any such work at the present time?' to determine current employment. Two countries (Benin and Korea) asked the question with slight variations, Benin by obtaining the information by means of the series of questions described above, rather than by a single direct question, and Korea by using the phrase 'these days' instead of 'now' or 'at the present time'. Two other countries introduced more important differences: Cameroon asked about employment 'at certain times of the year', and Fiji asked about work in the last 12 months, both widening the reference period to about one year.

#### Employment before or after marriage

All except four Caribbean countries used before first marriage and after marriage as the two periods on which employment data was obtained. The three English-speaking Caribbean countries (Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago) used before and after the first birth instead. This means that ever-married women with no live births would

only be asked about one period, rather than two, as in other countries; and, moreover, if they had only worked in the past (ie they were not current workers) the period that they had worked could have been before or after marriage or both. Haiti used a different approach. All women were asked about current employment, but the question on if ever worked was addressed only to those non-current workers who had ever had a partner. The non-comparability therefore affects only the never-in-union women, who would be asked about employment only if they were currently working, and would be omitted from all questions if they were not currently working. This is unlike other all-women samples where never-married non-current workers would be asked if they had ever worked. If they had, the full set of questions would apply.

A few countries expanded the single question on if ever worked since first marriage (or ever worked for never-married women): Nigeria probed those who answered no, 'Any marketing or farming?' Benin also used the full set of probes, as for current work, on earning money, working in a small business subsistence farming, formal agriculture, or fishing, if women answered no.

Sri Lanka broke the single question into several:

- Any work in the past one month?
- If no: Any work in the past 12 months?
- If no: Ever worked since the day first married?

The Philippines used a more involved structure of questions, but the same information as obtained by core questions can be reached by combining the answers to questions on if ever worked and the date last worked. Senegal's overall structure of questions was different from the Philippines, but similar in the sense that these two questions were also used to determine whether worked after marriage.

Fiji's questions did not produce the equivalent information of the core questions: ever-workers who had no live births were asked only if they had worked in the last 12 months, not if they had worked since marriage. The two pieces of data available for this group are then if they had ever worked, and if they had worked in the last 12 months. Further questions were asked about the last job but except for those who worked in the last twelve months we do not know whether the last job was before or after marriage. Women with children, on the other hand, were probed about employment in the first birth interval, and employment since the birth of the first child, clearly yielding data on whether they had worked since the first marriage.

### **Year last worked since first marriage**

Most countries asked this question exactly as required, Fiji being the only case of complete omission (see table 8). The Latin American countries with all-women samples did not obtain the year last worked by never-married women, but African countries with these samples did, while for Haiti this question was used only for ever-married women since, as mentioned above, non-currently working never-married women were excluded from all questions. For the three English-speaking Caribbean countries the question referred to the first birth, rather than the first marriage, and Pakistan worded the question slightly differently, 'How long ago did you last work?' instead of asking the year.

### **Occupation since first marriage**

All countries obtained data on this topic. The only deviations are those of base population, already commented on, for Fiji, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago (see discussion on employment before and after marriage above). In Benin, with extensive probing of current workers, the interviewer did not need to ask a direct question, but simply entered the information on the main occupation, and the secondary occupation, where there was one. Those who had worked after marriage, but not at the time of the interview, were asked the direct question, however. All countries with all-women samples, as indicated in column 1 of table 8, asked this question for never-married ever-workers as well (only never-married current workers for Haiti).

### **Work on family farm**

The core questionnaire asked those women who were employed in agriculture in the last job since their first marriage, whether they worked on the family farm. Four countries omitted this question altogether (see table 8). Pakistan, which is one of the four, did so because in defining work itself, work on the family farm was excluded.

Slight changes in structure or wording occurred in a few other countries, but probably with no effect on comparability. Ghana and Nigeria specified in the question that the farm could be her own (implying from her family's side) or her husband's (or from his family). This was presumably a general issue that was always clarified in the country's Interviewer's Instruction Manual, as in the basic manual, 'Only if she works on a farm owned or leased by her husband, herself or someone else in her household, is the answer "Yes"'. The definition in the Nigerian interviewer's manual widens the circle of family beyond the household, however; this is a cultural question, with the appropriate definition of household or family being used by each country.

Different arrangements of questions were used by a few countries, but the equivalent information could be obtained. Fiji and Korea used a question on location of work which included the family farm as one location. The Philippines asked all ever-workers about their most recent job in agriculture, although it was expected to be asked only in regard to work after marriage. Mauritania questioned workers on the land separately from those working with animals. Mexico asked a separate question on the work status of agricultural employees, coding it in sufficient detail that it was possible to differentiate those who worked on their own family farm, as owners, leasing or as unpaid workers. It is possible, however, that a small proportion of other categories of farm workers, although paid, may have worked on family farms. Mauritania and Nigeria asked this question in connection with work before marriage as well, although the question was not suggested for work before marriage in the core questionnaire.

### **Location of work: home or away (Q607)**

Only Portugal completely omitted this question. Most countries asked it exactly as required: only to women who had not worked in farming, and only in regard to work since the first marriage (see table 8). Apart from the usual exceptions noted for the base populations of Guyana,



Jamaica, Trinidad & Tobago and Fiji, a few countries collected additional information. Mauritania and Nigeria asked this question as required, but did so for work both before and after marriage. Benin and Malaysia asked all who had worked after marriage, including those in farming; since neither asked farm workers whether they worked on the family farm, this question indirectly yields some information on this subject as well. Philippines asked the question of all ever-workers, which contained the required group, who could be selected on the basis of other questions. Fiji and Korea put a combined question, to all who had worked since marriage (for Korea) and to the usual special base population (for Fiji), including the usual codes, home and away, as well as family farm.

### Work status (Q608)

All countries asked a question on work status, but in addition to the non-standard base populations of Guyana, Jamaica, Trinidad & Tobago and Fiji, two other countries had restricted information. Kenya excluded altogether, the category self-employed, while Pakistan excluded the category 'employed by a family member' because, in their definition of work, employment on the family farm was excluded. In contrast a few countries had added detail, expanding the usual classification. Panama asked the group 'employed by someone else' whether they were employed by government, private enterprise, in the Canal Zone or by a family household, as did Costa Rica, omitting the group 'Canal Zone' only. Ecuador and Sri Lanka split the self-employed group into working alone and being an employer. Mexico, Turkey and Bangladesh similarly split this group, asking if they had any paid employees and, if so, how many. Mexico also used a detailed classification of work status treating farm and non-farm workers separately:

Farm workers	Non-farm workers
Dueña – owner	Dueña
Ejidataria – lessee	Trabaja por su cuenta – self-employed
Administradora – manager	Administradora
Empleada – employee	Empleada
Obrera – manual employee	Obrera
Mediera – share-cropper	Trabajadora familiar no remunerada
Jornalera – day worker (casual labourer)	
Trabajadora familiar no remunerada – unpaid family worker	

Where the first two categories for both farming and non-farming occupation is equivalent to self-employed, the last is employment by a family member and all others could be treated as employed by someone else, although a small proportion of them may be employed by family members.

A few other countries widened the base population beyond the expected one of those working in non-farming occupations only. Ivory Coast, Ghana and Mauritania asked those who were in farming but not on the family farm, as well as the usual group. Mauritania asked the question in regard to before marriage work also, although it is usually asked only for work since marriage. Several countries (Benin, Korea, Malaysia, Philippines and Portugal) asked all who had worked, including family farm workers

where these had already been identified. Portugal added a code 'member of a co-operative,' while Malaysia's categories were somewhat non-standard: unpaid family workers, employee, own account, and employer. As for Mexico, some paid family workers may be included in the category 'employee' which would be different from the usual approach, which is to classify them as 'employed by a family member'.

### Paid in cash or kind (Q609)

In the core section this question was put to all who had worked since marriage, excepting only family farm workers, and the answer was coded cash, kind or unpaid. Two countries which had specified that only work for cash (or wage/salary) was considered to be work omitted this question (Kenya and Bangladesh). Of the three others who had the same restriction on the definition of work, Ghana and Lesotho nevertheless asked the question, and even included a code for 'unpaid', although this would seem to have been excluded by definition. The third, Fiji, asked a different question, on the basis of payment, whether by wage, by the job done, by goods sold or some other basis, to everyone, including the self-employed. Three other countries omitted this question (Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago).

Other changes were observed in a few countries. The Dominican Republic simplified the usual categories to cash or any other form of payment. The Cameroon specified cash or kind, omitting 'unpaid'. Haiti simply asked if the person was paid or not. Portugal asked only those employed by family members whether they were paid, making the not unreasonable assumption that all others earned money. Pakistan, which excluded work on the family farm in its definition of work, had no 'unpaid' group; its codes were cash, kind or both. Malaysia did not have a general 'family worker' group, only 'unpaid family workers', who were excluded; this question was therefore asked only of employees. The result of the two questions therefore yield equivalent information.

Several countries collected additional information. Although the core question excludes those who worked on the family farm, assuming that they are not paid, the following few countries asked them, as well as the usual group, this question – Benin, Egypt, Ivory Coast, Mauritania, Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR. Ghana put the question not only to family farm workers but also to the self-employed. The Philippines asked all who ever worked this question, in regard to their most recent job. Ecuador collected detailed data on monthly income, obtaining the money value of all income, separately for cash, kind and other forms of income, and separately for the main job and any other employment, asking everyone who had worked since marriage, including family employees and the self-employed. Malaysia also asked all workers, converting income in kind to its equivalent monetary value.

Other countries which asked questions on income had some restrictions: Sri Lanka asked only those who worked in the last 12 months, Portugal only current workers, while Egypt, Colombia, Korea and Mexico asked all who worked after marriage. In addition, Colombia and Egypt asked only cash earners, while Mexico, Korea, Portugal and Sri Lanka asked cash earners and the self-employed, but

did not convert the income of those who earned in kind into money value, as did Ecuador and Malaysia.

#### Years worked since first marriage

The last question on work after the first marriage asked the number of years worked since marriage. Only two countries omitted the question altogether (Fiji and Turkey). Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago asked the number of years worked since the first birth, for women with children, and the total number of years worked, for childless women.

Most countries with all-woman samples did not ask the question to never-married (in its rephrased form, as total years worked), although this group was asked all other questions usually asked about work since marriage, in regard to their most recent job. Morocco, however, did ask both never-married and ever-married women; and Senegal, using a different approach, obtained total years worked for never-married women with no children, and years worked after the first birth for those with children, asking ever-married women the usual question, however. A separate question obtained years worked before the first birth for never-married mothers, completing the data on total years worked for never-married women.

#### Whether worked in first birth interval and other intervals

Women with one or more children were asked whether they worked in the first birth interval. Ten countries omitted this question (see table 8). It is interesting to note that of the five countries which defined work to be for money in their introductory statement, two did not mention working for money in this question (Bangladesh and Lesotho), but two again mentioned it (Fiji and Kenya). The fifth country, Ghana, omitted this question.

Four countries asked about other intervals as well as the first birth interval:

- Philippines — the date of starting the most recent job was obtained, and women who were employed in the period after marriage at additional jobs other than the most recent, and who also had one or more births, were asked several questions on each birth interval preceding that in which the last job was started: whether worked; when started, month and year; occupation; if worked continuously up to birth of next child or up to the present time; if not, why stopped
- Portugal — asked all women with 1+ pregnancies whether they returned to work after the first pregnancy; and also asked women with 2 or more pregnancies whether they returned to work between the first and second pregnancies; and if they did so, how much time passed before they started working. Women with 3 or more pregnancies were asked whether they worked between their last 2 pregnancies and, if so, how much time passed before they started working
- Sri Lanka — asked all women who had worked since first marriage, whether they worked in each birth

interval up to a maximum of ten birth intervals.

- Thailand — as for Sri Lanka, but for each interval up to the seventh, and whether worked since the last birth.

#### Whether worked before first marriage

No country completely omitted this question. For the three English-speaking Caribbean countries, work before the first birth was determined instead, with the result that for ever-married women with no child, employment data was collected only for one point in time, instead of the usual two. Of the five countries which specified that only work for cash (or pay, profit, wage or salary) would be considered to be work, two did not use this phrase again (Bangladesh and Lesotho) although the intent of the questioning would probably carry through to all questions. The other three again emphasized that employment should be for profit (Fiji, Ghana and Kenya).

Nigeria probed those who said they had not worked with a further question, 'Any marketing or farming?' Sri Lanka and Thailand broke the question into two parts, whether worked in the 12 months before marriage and, if not, whether worked at any time before marriage. The Philippines used a different structure of questioning, using the date of beginning of the current or last job, if it was the only job, to determine whether employed before first marriage but directly asking those with more than one job whether their first job was before or after marriage. Senegal, with an all-woman sample, enlarges the group eligible for this question to include never-married women with children asking whether they worked before their first birth.

#### Occupation, work status and type of payment before first marriage

Two countries, Fiji and Portugal, essentially omitted this and all other questions on work before marriage, because only one set of questions was asked, about the most recent job. This means that a small proportion who had only worked before marriage would have information on this period of the life cycle, but all others would not, even if they had worked before. The usual non-comparability in regard to the three English-speaking Caribbean countries, that data was collected for work before the first birth, not before the first marriage, applies here as well. Benin used the same set of detailed probes as for occupation after marriage, to obtain occupation before first marriage. In the case of work status before the first marriage, three countries omit the question (Fiji, Mexico, Portugal), although no country omitted it for employment since marriage. The exceptions noted earlier for work after marriage, in regard to base populations, do not apply here, since all workers are asked. Observations made for work after marriage in regard to codes used, however, for Costa Rica, Ecuador, Panama, Kenya, Malaysia and Pakistan, apply to work status before marriage as well. Ecuador split the self-employed into working alone and being an employer, while Bangladesh also asked how many were employed.

In the case of type of payment, while only five countries omitted the question for work after marriage (Bangladesh, Kenya, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago), these

and four more countries omitted it for work before marriage (Cameroon, Fiji, Mexico and Portugal). The comments made earlier in regard to the use of categories for payment of work after marriage apply here as well, for Dominican Republic, Haiti, Malaysia and Pakistan.

In addition to the two countries which did not ask the number of years worked after marriage (Fiji and Turkey), two others did not do so for the number of years worked before marriage (Portugal and Sri Lanka). Ghana modified the question, asking for the number of years worked after age 15 and before marriage, in addition to mentioning again that work should be for pay or profit. Bangladesh, Kenya and Lesotho, which also define work to be for payment in cash (or wage, salary, etc) do not repeat the definition in this question. Senegal obtained the number of years worked before the first birth for never-married mothers, in addition to the usual question for ever-married women.

### Questions on added topics

In 1977 some recommended additions to the core questionnaire were published (*WFS Basic Documentation* no 10) and these included questions on whether work was full-time or part-time, seasonal or non-seasonal. As a result it was mainly the more recent countries which asked these questions. In this section we discuss these and a few other topics dealt with by a minority of countries.

#### *Part-time and full-time work/seasonality of employment*

The recommendation was to have the interviewer record, from the information she would already have received from asking the usual questions, but probing if necessary, whether the type of work was (1) non-seasonal, full-time (2) non-seasonal, part-time or (3) seasonal. This was recommended for both employment before marriage and for the most recent job since marriage. Interviewers were instructed about the definition of part-time work.

A few countries followed this approach exactly – Egypt, Lesotho, Paraguay, Senegal, Sudan, Syria, Venezuela and Yemen AR. Three others, Benin, Ivory Coast and Mauritania, followed a different approach, directly asking two separate questions: was the work full or part-time and was it seasonal or not, partly leaving the categorization to the respondent's judgement. These three countries also asked the questions for employment both before and after marriage. Peru used a variation on the second approach, asking if the work was all day or part of the day, and whether work was only for some months or for most of the year. Ecuador was more precise and asked the number of hours worked per day, number of days per week and number of months in the year, also for work both before and after marriage.

Sri Lanka asked for the number of days worked per month, and months per year, for the most recent job since marriage. Only Malaysia and Korea asked the number of hours worked per week, Korea for recent work only and Malaysia for work both before and after marriage. Egypt asked the number of hours worked per month, in addition to the recommended questions on seasonality. Fiji asked a direct question in regard to the most recent job – was it full-time or part-time? Portugal obtained the number of months worked in the last 12 months.

#### *Unemployment*

A few countries asked different questions about this topic. Portugal asked all who were not currently working whether they would classify themselves as student/unemployed/pensioned/housewife or some other status. Turkey asked the same group 'Are you interested in finding any work at present?' and probed with an open-ended question. 'Why are you interested (or not interested)?'. Morocco and Tunisia similarly asked non-currently working women 'Do you want a job now?', and if so, 'Are you looking for a job now?' Tunisia only probed those who are looking for work now 'Would you accept a low-paid job?'. Women who had worked after marriage but who were not currently working were asked 'Why did you stop working?'.

Korea not only asked all women whether they were interested in finding work in future (or if they were already working, additional work at the present time), but if they were interested, also asked when, or in how many years' time. Those who were not interested were asked why not. In addition, if they did want work, women were asked whether they would be able to find work around their area and, if the answer was yes, they were further asked what kind of work, whether away from home or at home, how many hours per week, and how much they would earn.

In its husband's survey, Thailand asked questions similar to Korea, except that the base-population would be currently married women, and the husband was the respondent not the wife. The only Korean questions on this topic not asked by Thailand were about when work was wanted, and whether work could be found in that area.

#### *Approval of family*

Only Jamaica, Turkey and Malaysia asked about this topic in the individual survey. Malaysia asked all women how would family members feel about their working away from home, coding the answers as: against; would not mind; some against; some would mind; depends; uncertain; don't know. Turkey inquired of all women how their husband felt about their working (or would feel if they were working), coding the answer as approve; disapprove; does not care. Those who answered approve or disapprove were further probed 'In what way does he approve (or disapprove)?' Jamaica asked currently married or common-law women whether their partner approved or disapproved of their working, probing all answers for the reasons. Women who had not worked in the previous year were also asked their opinion of women working outside the home.

In addition Thailand asked husbands directly, in the husband's survey, whether they approved of their wife starting to work or taking on additional work.

#### *Child care*

Malaysia asked a hypothetical question to all women: 'Would having children make it difficult for you to work as much as you want to, or not?' Both yes and no answers are further probed about their reasons. Ecuador asks current workers with one or more living children 'Do you take your children with you to where you work, so that you can take care of them?' Those who answered no are then asked who takes care of them, the answer being coded as domestic servant, relative, another unrelated person, day nursery, or the children taking care of themselves. Those who

gave any of the first three answers were further asked 'Does this person take care of the child (children) in your house or outside of your house?'

Trinidad asked current workers with children under age five what arrangements were usually made to look after the children while they were working, the codes being: leave with mother or grandmother; leave with other relative; leave with neighbour; leave with maid; leave at nursery school, etc; other. Jamaica asked women who had children aged 14 or less in the household how their children were taken care of (if they had worked in the past year) or would be taken care of (should they start working) with the following codes: children old enough; work at home; take them to work; older children or other family take care; day care centre; household help; neighbours, friends; private care-takers; other. The last three groups were further asked if they had to pay someone to look after the children. Thailand asked questions similar to Jamaica, directly to husbands, in the husband's survey.

Turkey asked current workers with one or more children under age 15, 'Do you have someone to look after the children when you are at work?' and 'How are the children looked after when you are at work?' The interviewer was instructed not to prompt the respondent with a list of answers, but simply to record spontaneous answers. The same questions were repeated in a hypothetical sense, to women who were not currently working, but who had children under age 15.

### *Industry*

Malaysia and Mexico ascertained the industry in which women were employed, for work both before and after marriage. Portugal did so for the most recent job only, while Sri Lanka obtained the name and address of the employer and the major activity of the place of employment, for women who had worked in the past 12 months only.

## 3.3 HUSBAND'S EMPLOYMENT

A set of questions were asked about the current or last husband's most recent job — what was his occupation, his work status, whether paid in cash, kind or not paid, whether he had any employees, and their number, if any. The interviewer's instructions usually specify that if husbands were present, the respondent may consult her husband or he himself may answer the questions. This doubtless happened to some extent, but usually was not recorded. Turkey was the only country to record whether the husband was present, and how much he helped in answering these questions. Jamaica designed the section on husbands or partners in such a way that if husbands themselves responded, different questions were used, and this meant that at least in the raw data, the two can be distinguished. Information on the presence of husbands at earlier points in the interview, however, shows that typically they were present in only about 5 per cent of interviews, although in a few countries this rose to 10 per cent and in a few others to as much as 25 per cent, which gives an idea of the maximum proportion of husbands who could have assisted in answering these questions.

## Occupation

The question on occupation was asked in a standard manner by all but one country: Fiji defined work to be for money, as was also done for respondent's work. In the case of husbands, however, this should introduce a lesser degree of non-comparability, since it is likely that the proportion working without pay or for income in kind is lower than it would be for their wives.

## Work status

Work status also was obtained by the recommended question, with only a few exceptions. Mexico and Malaysia had a similar deviation from the usual data obtained: a group called 'unpaid family worker' was coded separately, but the usual group 'family employee' was not distinguished. This means that for these two countries some family employees who are paid, in any form, would be combined with the usual group 'Employed by someone else'. Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago coded three groups, unpaid, paid in wage or salary and own business or farm. Again the usual distinction, between being employed by family and being employed by someone else, is not maintained. Pakistan reduces the categories to two, employed and self-employed, also omitting the family/non-family distinction.

As was done for respondent's work status, Portugal added a code 'Member of a co-operative', and Mexico applied the same detailed classification used for women's work status, as described earlier in this section. Mauritania used different questions but collected basically the same data. Those whose occupation was agricultural including animal husbandry, were not asked the usual work status question although non-farm workers were asked. Instead they were asked if they worked on their own, or their family's or someone else's lands (herds), coded as three groups which are equal to the usual three work status groups. As in the case of women's work status, Costa Rica and Panama asked a further question for husbands who were employed by someone else — whether he worked for the Government, for a private enterprise or for a private household, and (in the case of Panama only), a fourth possibility was given, in the Canal Zone.

## Paid in cash or kind

The question on the form of payment is usually asked to the non self-employed and coded as cash, kind or unpaid. It was omitted by Fiji, which had defined work as employment earning money, and by Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago, although the last two had partial information from an earlier question which categorized husbands as unpaid, earning a wage or salary and self-employed: the only category not used was payment in kind, and this is probably an unimportant omission for these two countries. As in the case of women, some countries simplified the question and categories. Kenya, Malaysia and Pakistan omitted a code for unpaid, Kenya coding the answers as cash or kind, while Malaysia and Pakistan added a code for 'both', combined payment. Dominican Republic used two codes, cash, or any other form, while Haiti simply recorded whether the person was paid or not. Portugal assumed that



all those who worked for others were paid, and asked only family employees whether they were paid or not.

### Number of employees

Pakistan omitted the questions on whether the husband had any employees, and if so, how many. Fiji worded the question differently and addressed it only to currently married women. 'Does (did) he pay regular wages to other people who work (worked) for him?' and omitted the question on how many persons were employed. Malaysia and Portugal also omitted the question on number of employees. Trinidad & Tobago omitted the word 'regular' from the question, which may result in short-term employees being counted.

### Additional questions on husband's employment

#### *Currently working?*

The core questionnaire does not ask whether the respondent's husband is currently working but a few countries obtained some information on this subject, for currently married women. Indonesia, Korea, Portugal and Sri Lanka asked whether the husband was currently working. Sri Lanka then asked about those who were not working, whether they worked in the past month and, if not, whether they did so in the past year; and finally, if not in the past year, the last year in which he worked was obtained. Indonesia, Korea and Portugal asked whether those not currently working had worked in the past year and Indonesia further asked the last year of work if he had not worked in the past year. Fiji asked whether the husband had done any work in the past 12 months which earned him money, and if not, classified him by his main activity. Portugal also classified those who had not worked in the past 12 months by main activity.

#### *Income*

Several countries asked questions on this subject. Portugal obtained the average monthly income for husbands of currently married women only, while Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago did so for husbands of women in married or common-law unions only, Jamaica obtaining monthly and Trinidad an annual income. Mexico asked for the income of the current or the last husband, and recorded it in whatever form it was received (daily, weekly, etc), converting it to a monthly average, and coding those who did not earn money as a special group. Ecuador obtained, for the current or the last husband, the monthly income, in cash or kind, for the husband's main job only, and converted it to equivalent cash value. Korea asked only currently married women whose husbands had worked in the last 12 months, what was his average monthly income. Malaysia, like Ecuador, asked about the current or last husband, for all income,

whether in cash or in kind, converting income in kind to its cash value.

Three countries obtained the total income of the *household* — Korea, Malaysia and Trinidad & Tobago. Korea asked a single direct question, if anyone else earned an income, how much was the household's total income. Korea then asked whether the household's income was considered to be quite adequate, just about, somewhat less than or much less than adequate. Malaysia asked separately, for each earning member, his name, relationship to head, and amount earned in cash or kind, finally asking what was the family's average monthly income. Trinidad & Tobago asked specifically how much was earned or received from family production of farming, market gardening, animals or poultry and the equivalent market value of the family's consumption of goods they produced. Respondents were also asked if there were others living in households, who earned an income, how much of this income was contributed to the household. A final probe was used on any other income during the last year, reading out a list:

- free food or housing, or an allowance for food or housing
- pay from a second job or extra work
- a bonus, cost of living allowance, other extra pay
- rent from a house, farm, or share in a farm
- interest/dividends from bonds, shares/savings deposit
- income from a business or share in a business
- money from relatives/partners not in household
- any other income.

#### *Industry*

Three countries asked the industry in which husbands worked, as well as the usual question on occupation: Mexico, Malaysia and Portugal.

#### *Other questions*

Special questions were asked by a few countries. Bangladesh asked about husband in farming: whether he owned any land; whether he cultivated land himself or someone else did so. Mexico asked about self-employed farmers, how much land they owned. Mexico also asked if the husband had a secondary occupation, and recorded it. Questions on the occupation, industry, work status, number of employees and landownership of self-employed farmers, were also asked in regard to employment at the time of *beginning* the current or last marriage in Mexico.

The Philippines asked where was the husband's place of work, coding the result relative to the place of current residence, as within the same barangay; outside, but in the same city or municipality; outside the city or municipality but in the same province; and outside the province. Women were also asked how the husband got to work (transport) and how long it took him to get to work. Korea asked how many people were employed at his place of work.

## 4 Maternity History

The WFS model questionnaire was designed to collect information on each conception in the respondent's life, in contrast to a census, for example, which usually obtains only the total number of children ever born, or the number of children born in the last year. The recommended structure was first to obtain the total number of live births by a series of questions, followed by questions on each live birth, beginning with the first, to obtain the date of the birth, sex of the child, whether it was still alive, and the age at death, if the child had died. In a separate table, after asking the total number of non-live pregnancies, the details of each such pregnancy were also obtained. One of the main reasons for asking about non-live pregnancies was to discover any live births which died shortly after birth, and which were believed to have a high probability of being omitted when women reported the total number of live births (see table 9 for actual questions). These questions also helped in dating live births more accurately, and could be extended to obtain data on abortions.

A basic source of variation among countries was the use of an all-woman sample, in the maternity history. Almost all countries which had all-woman samples asked never-married women about pregnancies and births, with these questions usually preceding the marriage history, so that interviewers are less likely to be influenced by knowing the woman's marital status. The only exception was Morocco, where the never-married were skipped out of these questions. Never-married women were only asked about conceptions and births in countries where the cultural context made it feasible (in sub-Saharan Africa, the Caribbean and Latin America) and the first few questions on numbers of children and pregnancies were modified so as to select out never-pregnant women at an early stage.

### 4.1 STRUCTURE OF BIRTH HISTORY

Not all countries used the recommended approach for obtaining a maternity history, ie one table for all live births, and a separate, later table for non-live pregnancies. As shown in table 10, only ten countries used the core structure more or less as recommended: Fiji, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Colombia, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Panama, Peru and Jordan. The most commonly used approach was to have a single integrated table, with questions asked on all live births first, then questions asked on other pregnancies for each live birth interval – 14 countries used this structure, shown as B in table 10.

A third approach, used by six countries, was to obtain a fully integrated pregnancy history. The total number of pregnancies would have been first obtained, and these are treated chronologically with an added question on the outcome of each pregnancy. This approach is called C(1)

in table 10, and two other variants are also noted as C(2), used in Bangladesh, Egypt and Mauritania, and C(3), used in Haiti. The C(2) variant did not obtain the number of pregnancies first, but started with the first live birth, and before proceeding to the second, asked about other (non-live) pregnancies in the first birth interval, ie before the first birth. This was repeated for other births; thus before moving on to the third live birth other pregnancies in the second birth interval would be obtained. Haiti's variation was to use the fully integrated pregnancy history (C(1)) but to reverse the order, beginning with the last birth and moving backwards in time. Although Senegal used the B type structure, two fundamental differences exist. First, the order of obtaining live births was reversed, starting with the most recent birth and moving backwards in time. Secondly, this data was first obtained at the household interview, where the woman might not be the respondent, although it was verified with the respondent herself at the individual interview.

The two D approaches basically segmented conceptions into three or four groups, and completed information on all events of one type, before moving on to events of the next type, although only one physical table was used in recording the information. The Philippines used three types of events: living children, children born alive but now dead, and all non-live births, and was the only country to add a question specifically asking whether each living child lived at home or elsewhere. The four Latin American countries which used this approach, Dominican Republic, Mexico, Paraguay and Venezuela, used four types of events, living children, dead children, still births, and miscarriages (including spontaneous or induced abortions).

### 4.2 NUMBER OF LIVE BIRTHS

The core section begins with a series of questions asking the number of living sons and daughters living with and not living with respondent, and the number of dead children. These questions were used simply to obtain the total number of events before beginning the specific questions on each birth – they were not treated as an independent check on the birth history itself. Several countries asked this series of questions as in the core – Fiji, Indonesia, Korea, Malaysia, Nepal, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Jordan, Turkey and Yemen AR. Fiji also added a phrase to the question on children living away, 'please include any who have been given away in adoption'. Most of these countries were among the earlier WFS surveys. Later on, it was agreed that it was repetitious, and wasted time, to put the full set of questions to women who had no live births, and in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire, a new approach was suggested. Women were first asked if they

had given birth to any children. Those who had not were further probed: they were asked if they had had a child who lived for only a short time; if not, whether they had ever been pregnant; and if not, whether they had had a pregnancy that lasted only a few weeks or months. However, only women with one or more live births were asked the usual set of eight questions with ever-married samples. Several countries used this approach to separate out childless women: Lesotho, Mauritania, Morocco, Sudan, Tunisia, Egypt and Syria. However, countries with all-women samples, even among the earlier surveys, had used a similar set of questions, because of the need to separate out the never-married, most of whom would have been childless. All the countries with all-women samples in Africa and the Caribbean, and all Latin American surveys including Peru, with an ever-married sample, used this approach, with only minor variations. Those countries which had a fully integrated pregnancy history also had to ask how many still births and miscarriages (and in some cases abortions as well) the respondent had had, before beginning to complete the pregnancy history.

Bangladesh essentially omitted this set of questions, since although women were asked if they ever had live births or non-live births, the number they had was not obtained. Senegal also did not use the recommended questions: the number of pregnancies and other data were taken from the age-event chart completed at the household interview, where the information was not necessarily given by the respondent herself. However, the respondent was asked to verify data on each pregnancy, so the number was indirectly verified by her. The Philippines used a different approach, first separating out women who had never had any children, and asking them the usual set of probes. Other women were asked the number of living children, and data on those was collected; then they were asked the number who died, and data on these were obtained; finally the number of non-live births was obtained and information on those collected. However, since a question on living at home or away was asked about each living child in the birth history, the equivalent information was obtained. Portugal, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago did not ask separate questions on sons and daughters, but did ask separately about those living with the mother and those living away. The recommended question on the number of children who died was not asked separately for boys and girls, but a few countries did code the number separately for boys and girls: Egypt, Ghana, Lesotho and Malaysia.

### 4.3 BIRTH HISTORY

The history of all live births is at the heart of the WFS-type fertility surveys. Thus, while countries varied in how they obtained the recommended items, all countries obtained the essential items, with only one exception, noted in the discussion about age at death, below. The four basic items to be collected for each live birth were: the date of birth; the sex of the child; whether the child was still alive; and if not, how long the child lived. Two of these, sex and whether alive, were obtained as recommended by all countries. Some variation occurred in questions on the date of birth and how long the child lived, however.

Countries also frequently did not follow the core ordering

of the questions. The most common variation was immediately to ask for the names of all children before beginning to ask the details on each birth. The core questionnaire was designed so as to obtain only the names of children who were alive, under the assumption that in some cultures there may be a taboo against mentioning the names of dead children or simply a reluctance to do so. This approach was later included in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire, as an alternative to the format originally recommended.

### Dating of births and deaths

Slightly under half of all countries (18) used the core format exactly, but the questions to obtain the dates of births were frequently changed where the type of calendar was different, or occasionally to provide a cross-check on the correctness of the date or where correct dating was problematic, eg in low literacy countries. The few cases of use of non-western calendars are found in Asia. Korea made the greatest change, asking the full set of questions used to obtain the respondent's date of birth for the date of birth of each child.

Indonesia allowed the month of birth to be supplied in the Muslim or western or any other specified type of calendar. Pakistan and Nepal asked the season in which the child was born, if the month was unknown, and Nepal used the Nepalese calendar of years, later converted to the western system.

The recommended two questions, 'In what month and year did your — birth occur?' and the probe for those who did not know the date, 'How many years ago was your — birth?' were expanded by several countries. Five countries recorded *both* the age and date of birth for all living children (Dominican Republic, Mexico, Paraguay, Philippines and Venezuela); it is likely that this double questioning was used to cross check the accuracy of the date of birth. Three countries asked the length of each birth interval (Egypt, Indonesia and Tunisia), and Turkey did so for each interval except the first (from marriage to the first birth), in addition to obtaining the date of each birth. Presumably this was done to cross-check the accuracy of the data. A few countries added a probe question for those who did not supply the calendar year of birth. Nepal used a sequence of three probes — how old is the child, or how many years ago the child was born or how old was the woman when she gave birth to that child?; this data was easily converted to the corresponding year, since the table contained two columns, the number of years ago and the respondent's age (filled in by the interviewer) corresponding to each calendar year, listed in adjacent columns. The Cameroon asked women who did not know the year of a birth three probes, to cross check the correctness of each item — how long ago the pregnancy ended (the core question), how old was the woman at the time, and how long after the previous pregnancy did this pregnancy end? Ghana, Kenya and Lesotho asked women who still did not know the year of a birth after the usual probe, the length of the interval between the previous birth and that birth. Sudan and Yemen AR replaced the usual probe question with a question on the length of the interval since the previous birth or since the first marriage. Haiti also replaced the core probe with a single question on how old the child now was — but

**Table 9** Core questionnaire section on the maternity history  
**SECTION 2. MATERNITY HISTORY**

201. We should like to get a complete record of all the babies each woman has actually given birth to in all of her life. Do you have any sons you have given birth to now living with you?

YES  1 NO  2  
 (SKIP TO 203)

202. How many live with you? \_\_\_\_\_

36

37

203. Do you have any sons you have given birth to who do not live with you?

YES  1 NO  2  
 (SKIP TO 205)

204. How many do not live with you? \_\_\_\_\_

39

40

205. Do you have any daughters you have given birth to now living with you?

YES  1 NO  2  
 (SKIP TO 207)

206. How many live with you? \_\_\_\_\_

42

43

207. Do you have any daughters you have given birth to who do not live with you?

YES  1 NO  2  
 (SKIP TO 209)

208. How many do not live with you? \_\_\_\_\_

45

46

209. Have you ever given birth to any boy or girl who later died, even if the child lived for only a short time?

YES  1 NO  2  
 (SKIP TO 211)

210. How many of your children have died? \_\_\_\_\_

48

49

211. INTERVIEWER: SUM ANSWERS TO 202, 204, 206, 208, and 210 AND ENTER TOTAL HERE:

\_\_\_\_\_ (SUM)

51

NOW ASK:

Just to make sure I have this right, you have had (SUM) births. Is that correct?

YES

NO

PROBE AND CORRECT RESPONSES AS NECESSARY

IF ZERO LIVE BIRTHS, SKIP TO 221.

IF ONE LIVE BIRTH, SKIP TO 212.

OTHERWISE:

Now I want to ask you some questions about each of your (SUM) births, starting with the first birth you had.

ASK 212-215 FOR EACH LIVE BIRTH. STARTING WITH THE FIRST. IF TWINS, USE ONE LINE FOR EACH AND CONNECT WITH A BRACKET AT THE LEFT.

**BIRTH HISTORY**

	212. In what month and year did your (first,second..) birth occur? <i>IF D.K., ASK HOW MANY YEARS AGO.</i>	213. Was it a boy or a girl?	214. Is this child still living? IF YES: What is (his/her) name?	215. IF DEAD: For how long did the child live?
				<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">4</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">1</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">2</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">4</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 5px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">7</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">9</div> </div>
01	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
02	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
03	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
04	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
05	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
06	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
07	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
08	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
09	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>

4

1

2

4

5

7

9

10

12

14

15

16

17

19

21

22

23

24

26

28

29

30

31

33

35

36

37

38

40

42

43

44

45

47

49

50

51

52

54

56

57

58

59

61

63

64

65

66

68

70

71

72

**BIRTH HISTORY**

	212. In what month and year did your (first,second..) birth occur? <i>IF D.K., ASK HOW MANY YEARS AGO.</i>	213. Was it a boy or a girl?	214. Is this child still living? IF YES: What is (his/her) name?	215. IF DEAD: For how long did the child live?
				<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">4</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">1</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">2</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">4</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 5px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">7</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">9</div> </div>
10	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
11	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
12	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
13	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
14	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
15	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
16	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
17	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>
18	MTH _____ YR _____ YRS AGO _____	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NAME _____ NO <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">MOS _____</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">YRS _____</div>

4

1

2

4

5

7

9

10

12

14

15

16

17

19

21

22

23

24

26

28

29

30

31

33

35

36

37

38

40

42

43

44

45

47

49

50

51

52

54

56

57

58

59

61

63

64

65

66

68

70

71

72

Table 9 (cont'd)

216. Did you feed \_\_\_\_\_ (NAME, OR "MOST RECENT CHILD") at the breast?

YES  1 NO  2  
(SKIP TO 218)

217. For how many months did you breast feed?  
\_\_\_\_\_ (MONTHS) STILL BREAST-FEEDING

218. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX (SEE 211)

ONE BIRTH  1 TWO OR MORE BIRTHS  2  
(SKIP TO 221) (ASK 219)

219. And did you feed \_\_\_\_\_ (NAME, OR "SECOND TO LAST" CHILD) at the breast?

YES  1 NO  2  
(SKIP TO 221)

220. For how many months did you breast-feed (him/her)?  
\_\_\_\_\_ (MONTHS)

221. Are you pregnant now?

YES  1 NO  2 D.K.  3  
(SKIP TO 224) (SKIP TO 224)

222. When is the baby due? \_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_\_  
(MONTH) (YEAR)

223. Would you prefer to have a boy or a girl?

BOY  1 GIRL  2 EITHER  3  
OTHER ANSWER \_\_\_\_\_  
(SPECIFY)

5

1 2 4

5

10

12

13

14

16

17 19

21

224. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX (SEE 211, 221)

NO REPORTED PREGNANCIES  1

ONE OR MORE PREGNANCIES  2

225. Have you ever been pregnant?  
(IF "NO", PROBE: I mean, have you ever had a pregnancy, even one that lasted for just a few weeks or a few months?)

YES  1 NO  2  
(SKIP TO 234)

226. Aside from the time(s) you have told me about, have there been any other times you were pregnant?  
(IF "NO", PROBE: I mean, have you ever had a pregnancy that lasted for just a few weeks or a few months?)

YES  1 NO  2  
(SKIP TO 254)

227. How many times have you been pregnant?  
\_\_\_\_\_ (NUMBER)

228. How many such pregnancies have you had?  
\_\_\_\_\_ (NUMBER)

FOR EACH SUCH PREGNANCY ASK 229-233, THEN SKIP TO 234.

22

23

24

**OTHER PREGNANCIES**

	229. In what month and year did your (first such, second such...) pregnancy end?	230. <i>INTER- VIEWER: IF DK TO 229 DETERMINE BEFORE OR AFTER WHICH LIVE BIRTH(S) THE EVENT OCCURRED</i>	231. How many months did that pregnancy last?	232. IF 7 OR MORE IN 231: Did the baby cry or show any other sign of life after it was born?	233. IF YES TO 232: Was the baby a boy or a girl?
1	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>
2	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>
3	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>
4	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>
5	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>
6	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>
7	MTH _____ YR _____ D.K. <input type="checkbox"/>		(MONTHS) _____ <i>IF SEVEN OR MORE</i> →	YES <input type="checkbox"/> → NO <input type="checkbox"/>	BOY <input type="checkbox"/> GIRL <input type="checkbox"/>

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	28	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
30	31	32
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
33	35	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
37	38	39
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
40	42	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
44	45	46
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
47	49	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
51	52	53
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
54	56	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
58	59	60
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
61	63	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
65	66	67
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
68	70	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
72	73	74

*INTERVIEWER: IF ANY YESES IN 232, CORRECT TOTAL IN 211  
INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOXES IN 234 AND 235 BEFORE  
STARTING SECTION 3*

234. RELIABILITY OF ANSWERS IN SECTION 2:  
 GOOD  FAIR  POOR

235. PRESENCE OF OTHERS AT THIS POINT (TICK ALL THAT APPLY):  
 NO CHILDREN OTHER OTHER  
 OTHERS  UNDER 10  HUSBAND  MALES  FEMALES

75

76

Table 10 Use of questions to obtain history of live births and history of 'other' pregnancies

Country	Sample ALL or EM	Type of maternity history <sup>b</sup>	Use of event chart <sup>c</sup>	History of live births					Curr. pregn.		Non-live pregnancies				Abortion module					
				Number of births	Date of birth	Boy/girl	Still alive?	How long lived	If pregnant	When baby due	Probe: how many	Dating <sup>d</sup> (1) (2)	Duration	Signs of life	Boy or girl	In history – if abort.	Ever had abort.	How many	Dates of abort.	
Africa																				
Benin	ALL	B	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	×	✓*	✓	×	×	**	**	×	×
Cameroon	ALL	C(1)	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	**	**	×	×
Ghana	ALL	B	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Ivory Coast	ALL	C(1)	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	**	**	×	×
Kenya	ALL	B	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Lesotho	EM	B	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Nigeria	ALL	B	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Senegal	ALL	C(3)	✓	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓*	×	✓*	×	✓	×	×	**	×	×	×
Egypt	EM	C(2)	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	**	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Mauritania	EM	C(2)	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	**	✓*	**	✓*	✓*	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×
Morocco	EM	B	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Sudan N	EM	B	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	**	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Tunisia	EM	B	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Asia and Pacific																				
Jordan	EM	A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	✓	✓*	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Syria	EM	C(1)	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	**	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Turkey	EM	B	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	×	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	**	**
Yemen AR	EM	B	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	**	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Bangladesh	EM	C(2)	×	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Nepal	EM	B	×	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Pakistan	EM	A	×	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	**	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	✓	✓	✓
Sri Lanka	EM	A	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	✓	×	×
Fiji	EM	A	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Indonesia	EM	B	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Korea, Rep. of	EM	B	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Malaysia	EM	B	×	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Philippines	EM	D(1)	×	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	✓	✓	×	×
Thailand	EM	A	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Americas																				
Colombia	ALL	A	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Ecuador	ALL	A	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Paraguay	ALL	D(2)	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	**	✓	✓	×	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×
Peru	EM	A	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Venezuela	ALL	D(2)	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	**	✓	✓	×	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×
Costa Rica	ALL	A	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Dominican Rep.	ALL	D(2)	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	**	✓	✓	×	✓	×	✓	×	×	×	×	×	×
Mexico	ALL <sup>a</sup>	D(2)	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	✓	×	×	✓	×	×	×
Panama	ALL	A	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×
Guyana	ALL <sup>a</sup>	C(1)	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	×	✓	×	×	**	×	×	×
Haiti	ALL	C(3)	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	×	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×
Jamaica	ALL <sup>a</sup>	C(1)	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	×	✓	×	×	**	×	×	×
Trinidad & Tob.	ALL <sup>a</sup>	C(1)	×	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	×	✓	×	×	**	✓	✓	✓
Europe																				
Portugal	EM	B	×	✓*	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	×	✓	✓	✓	×	×	×	×

<sup>a</sup>Some 15–19 year-olds were excluded: in the English-speaking Caribbean, those attending school full-time, and in Mexico, those who were never in a union and childless.

<sup>b</sup>A = core questionnaire; B = table integrated, but first all live births, then non-live births for each birth interval; C(1) = Fully integrated pregnancy history – total number of pregnancies obtained, and questioned sequentially; C(2) = alternating live birth, then non-live pregnancies in that interval; C(3) = C(1), except reverse chronological order for questions on births; D(1) and D(2) = segmented histories – first all living children, then all dead children, then all non-live pregnancies (sometimes split into two groups), but all entered in one physical table.

<sup>c</sup>In addition, 3 countries (Nepal, Korea and Malaysia) used a conversion chart with the maternity history, and several countries (notably Ghana and Kenya) used historical calendars.

<sup>d</sup>Column 1 shows if the actual date of termination was asked, and column 2 whether the interval within which the non-live pregnancy occurred was also asked.

✓ = Obtained data equivalent to core question.      ×\* = Did not ask core question but obtained equivalent data from other questions.

✓\* = Obtained additional data and core information.      × = Omitted question altogether.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with core.



presumably this was asked only about living children. Portugal did not specify any probe question at all for women who did not know the date of a birth, but the interviewer may nevertheless have probed for a date of birth. Three countries specifically instructed the interviewer, in the questionnaire, to request birth certificates and to use them when completing the dates of birth (Haiti, Senegal and Tunisia), but this could well have happened in other surveys as part of the training given to interviewers.

Three countries (Benin, Ivory Coast and Mauritania) did not explicitly write down any probes for women who could not give a calendar year, but interviewers entered all known dates on an age-event chart, and used this as a framework for probing about events where the year was unknown. Senegal, as mentioned before, differed from all other countries in that dates of all live births was obtained at the household survey, and entered onto an age-event chart; then these dates were verified with the respondent herself and changed if necessary. Questions were not written out, however, and the interviewer had to formulate appropriate questions herself.

The core question to obtain the age of the child at death was to ask how long the child lived. Several countries made a subtle change, phrasing the question in a more immediate sense, as how old was the child when he/she died, instead of the more abstract core question: Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Mauritania, Morocco, Nigeria, Tunisia, Indonesia and Pakistan did so. A few countries asked for the date of death, rather than the duration of the child's life: Korea and Portugal asked only the date, while Nepal asked both the date and how long the child lived, and Philippines also asked the date and the age of the child at death, further probing those who did not know the age whether it was less than 1, 1-4 or 4 or more years. Malaysia and Senegal asked the date and probed those who could not supply the date about how long the child lived; Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago also asked the date and probed those who did not know the date. But the probe was how many years ago the child had died. The Cameroon asked the core question and also asked for each death the date of death and how long ago the child had died. Haiti requested the certificate of death, as a further means of dating deaths. Benin asked the usual question but obtained duration in greater detail, coding it in days, months and years, while usually only months and years were recorded.

The only serious non-comparability in obtaining the duration of life of children who died arose in three Latin American countries (Dominican Republic, Paraguay and Venezuela) where the duration was coded as whole years, instead of years and months. The result was that deaths under age 1 were collapsed into a single group, making it impossible to calculate neo-natal and post-neonatal infant mortality rates.

#### 4.4 WHETHER PREGNANT AT TIME OF INTERVIEW

The core asked two questions of all women in the sample: whether the woman was pregnant, and the date the baby was due. An alternative to the second question was later provided in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire, 'For how many months have you been pregnant?'

All countries asked the question on whether the woman was currently pregnant, but seven countries restricted the base population, omitting those who had been widowed, divorced or separated for some time. The cut-off point was 6 months in Pakistan, 9 months in Sudan and Yemen AR and 12 months in Egypt, Jordan, Mauritania and Syria. The only case where the omission of this group may have had some effect on the proportion pregnant is Pakistan; but even here, the proportion who would have been out of marriage for exactly 7 to 9 months would be small. The original core question on the date due was used by most of the earlier surveys: 20 countries used this phrasing. The rest opted for some variant of the more direct alternative on the number of months pregnant (these countries are asterisked in table 10). The question had the advantage of avoiding the problem of incorrect dates that had occasionally arisen when the date due rather than duration was obtained. Three countries asked both the date due and the duration of pregnancy: Cameroon, Morocco and Tunisia. Bangladesh used a slightly different phrasing: 'How many months have passed since your menses stopped?', which implies that duration was underestimated by about half a month, in comparison with other countries.

#### 4.5 NON-LIVE BIRTHS

All countries obtained some information on this topic, but there was variation in the method of questioning, which may affect the completeness of the data obtained, in addition to the high probability that any data collected would substantially underestimate the true incidence of non-live pregnancies. The structure of the maternity history itself probably had some effect on coverage of these events. It is likely that a single question asking whether the woman had any 'other' pregnancies in her whole life (the approach used by the core questionnaire, A type countries in table 10) would result in a greater underestimation than if every single birth interval was probed (types B and C(2) in table 10). It is more questionable whether types C(1), C(3) and the D types would have done any better than the core approach, since they also rely on single introductory questions to find out either the total number of pregnancies (for types C(1) and C(3)) or of still births and miscarriages (D types).

#### Influence of birth history structure

Variation in the questions stemmed to a great extent from the type of maternity history used. Questions asking whether the respondent had any non-fertile pregnancies and if so how many, were asked in the core in order to complete the table on each 'other' pregnancy. Where a probe question was asked on each birth interval, however, this general question to obtain the total number was not needed. Several countries in this situation omitted the general probe: Bangladesh, Korea, Malaysia, Nepal, Mauritania and Turkey did so; but several others asked both the general probe and a specific question on each interval (Benin, Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho, Morocco, Nigeria, Sudan, Tunisia, Indonesia, Portugal and Yemen AR). Dominican Republic, Mexico, Paraguay and Venezuela asked two separate questions on still births and miscarriages, since the

structure of the birth history was designed to enter these in different columns. These countries also further probed each interval of three years (Dominican Republic, Paraguay and Venezuela) or two years (Mexico) for other pregnancies. Philippines and Senegal also probed intervals of two or more years for any 'other' pregnancies. Senegal did not specify any other probe question in the individual interview, because the total number of all pregnancies had been obtained when completing the age-event chart in the household survey. Several countries which had fully integrated pregnancy histories (Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Guyana, Haiti, Jamaica, Trinidad & Tobago and Syria) asked the general probe to get the number of 'other' pregnancies before questioning each pregnancy chronologically, regardless of whether it was fertile or not. Fiji and Jordan, while basically using a core structure for the birth and 'other' pregnancies histories, enlarged the usual probe questions: Fiji asked three questions, on the first birth interval, the period since the last birth, and at any other time, while Jordan systematically asked if there were any non-live pregnancies for each birth interval, and how many before proceeding to obtain the usual data on each such pregnancy.

#### Dating of non-live births

The core questions on dating of 'other' pregnancies asked month and year the pregnancy ended and, if this was not known, then the birth interval in which the pregnancy occurred was recorded (table 10, columns 1 and 2 respectively, under 'Non-live pregnancies, Dating'). Four countries did not ask the actual date at all, but only recorded the interval (Benin, Nigeria, Indonesia and Jordan). Many countries not only asked the date, but probed those who did not know it:

Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho and Tunisia	First how many years ago, and if still don't know, how long after the birth of the previous child
Bangladesh, Guyana, Jamaica, Trinidad & Tobago, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Peru, Syria and Morocco	How many years ago was the pregnancy
Malaysia, Sudan and Yemen AR	How many months or years after marriage, the first child, etc
Fiji and Korea	How old were you when . . .
Egypt	Specify if it was the beginning, middle or end of the interval

Interval was used as a further probe by all A type birth history countries, as recommended. However, the B and C types also automatically obtained the interval in which other pregnancies occurred, as a result of the questions asked. D types either asked interval as a probe or instructed the interviewer to place each such pregnancy on the table in its correct interval.

#### Duration of pregnancy and signs of life at birth

The number of months that the pregnancy lasted before termination was obtained by all countries with the aim of splitting those pregnancies into two groups, full-term (the same as still birth) and not full-term. The last two questions recommended in the core were designed to ascertain whether any live births which died soon after birth had been missed in the questioning on live births. Thus women were asked if still births (pregnancies of duration seven or more months) showed any signs of life and, if so, the sex of the child was determined. Several countries did not ask these questions at all. Four, which had a fully integrated pregnancy history (Senegal, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago), did not really need to do so, since the outcome of each pregnancy (whether live birth, still birth or non-live birth) was asked. Countries using the D type of structure also did not use these probes, presumably because their questions directly asked whether there were any still births and miscarriages. Two other countries, Benin and Mauritania, also omitted these probe questions.

#### Induced abortions

The abortion module further expanded questions on non-live pregnancies. Women were asked, concerning pregnancies whose duration was 6 months or less, whether they or a doctor or someone else had done anything to end that pregnancy early. The first column under the 'abortion module' section of table 10 shows that 17 countries asked this question exactly as suggested. Three others did not ask this exact question, but in coding the outcome of each pregnancy used abortion as a code, separately from still birth and miscarriage (Cameroon, Ivory Coast and Senegal). A few other countries simply mentioned the word abortion when asking about other pregnancies: Benin, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago.

The abortion module went further than this and also recommended additional questions, at a later stage in the interview, directly asking whether the respondent had had any abortions, how many, and obtaining dates for each. As shown in table 10, a few countries which had not asked the question on voluntary termination asked some or all of these questions: Trinidad & Tobago asked all questions, Pakistan asked the first two only and Sri Lanka asked only if the woman had ever had an abortion. A few countries which had already asked whether each miscarriage was voluntarily terminated, and also had the date or birth interval of each, also asked some of these questions. Bangladesh asked the full set (placing the abortion module at the end of the interview, in case some women were upset by these questions). Tunisia asked the first two only, and Philippines asked only whether the respondent had ever had an abortion. Turkey had an unusual approach: only those who had reported no induced abortion in the birth history were asked the first two of these questions (any abortion, how many), and all women who had one or more abortions (from birth history or from these questions) were asked the date of the *last* induced abortion, only.

## 5 Marriage History

The measurement of exposure to conception throughout the woman's life was as fundamental to the WFS questionnaire as the birth history. Thus all countries, with the sole exception of Nepal, included a history of all marriages (the dates of beginning and ending each, as well as the way each ended – see table 11 for core questionnaire section on marriage). Nepal obtained the date of marriage and the date of consummation, at the individual interview, but took current marital status (married, widowed, separated and divorced) from the household schedule. If the respondent was currently married then she was asked whether the husband was living in the household, and if not, when they stopped living together. No questions were asked about previous marriages – neither dates nor how they ended.

However, given that this aspect of life is especially determined by culture, we expect to find variations from the core questionnaire in the type of questions, if not in their aim. The definition of exposure used by WFS included all sexual unions, not only legal marriage. This meant that in Latin America, the Caribbean and in some African countries, unions that were consensual (cohabiting but not registered legally) and in the case of the Caribbean only, non-cohabiting sexual unions, were recognized as unions. Four Caribbean countries (Guyana, Haiti, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago) developed a special partner-relationships table to accommodate the existence of more than one type of union with a particular partner. Although Latin American countries obtained the type of union, they did not allow for more than one relationship with a given partner, except for Mexico, where a code 'Was married to the person she had lived with' was added. The type of questions used to obtain dates also varied among countries.

### 5.1 MARITAL STATUS

The standard recommended coding was married, widowed, divorced and separated, where an ever-married sample was expected. Where an all-woman sample was used a code was added for single or never-in-union women. Countries with all-woman samples (shown in table 12) added probes to determine whether the single woman had ever been in any union, or occasionally further probed those who had never been married or in a consensual union about whether they had had sexual relations (Costa Rica, Dominican Republic and Panama). In these three cases this was not used as the basis for classifying her as having been in a union. Venezuela used a similar probe question, but did so to women who had never used a method, in order to separate out only those never-users who had had sexual relations for the final probe on whether any method at all had ever been used.

A further variation occurred in the Caribbean countries which used a classification based on union status, not marital status. Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago

classified ever-in-union women into four groups: married; common-law, (ie consensual unions); visiting (ie sexual union with a steady partner, but not living in the same house); and not currently in union. Haiti's groups were *rinmin*, *fiancée*, *viv-a-vek* (types of visiting unions), *placée* (common-law), *mariée* (legally or religiously sanctioned marriage), and not currently in union. Thus, for these four countries the way in which a union ended (widowhood, separation, or in the case of legal marriage, divorce) is not recorded.

All Latin American countries and Portugal included consensual unions as a category, this type of union being equivalent to marriage, in the sense that the couple live together, although the union is not legalized. Mexico developed a more detailed classification of marital status, with 15 categories.<sup>5</sup>

This group of countries used the full marital status categories as well as adding the consensual group, ie widowed, divorced, separated, consensual, married and single, where appropriate.

In a few countries each marital status group was not coded separately, neither as regards current status nor the history of marriages, which meant that current status was reduced from the usual four categories to three, typically. In Fiji, where current union status was actually obtained from the marriage history, the coding was also not that recommended: married, widowed, divorced or separated, and deserted. Benin, Mauritania, Nigeria and Malaysia grouped divorced and separated together. The Philippines did not use 'divorced' as a category, presumably grouping the few such cases as 'separated'. Jordan, Morocco and Egypt did not use the category 'separated' again presumably collapsing them with 'divorced'.

The coding of marital status within the marriage history (see table 12) carries the same restrictions as described for current marital status. Exceptions are the all-woman African surveys where, although current status had to be specially probed because of single women, the questioning and coding in the history is standard. In the case of Nepal, as observed earlier, no marriage history was used.

### 5.2 PROBE ON STATUS OF THE CURRENTLY MARRIED

In the core questionnaire those who say they are currently married are asked whether their husband 'ordinarily' lives in the household, and if not, whether this is a temporary or

<sup>5</sup> Each of married, widowed, and separated were divided into three groups, according to whether the marriage was by civil ceremony only, by church only or by both. The divorced were divided into two groups, those who had been divorced by civil ceremony only or by church as well. Those separated and widowed from consensual unions were classified as two groups. Consensual unions and single women form the last two groups.

**Table 11** Core questionnaire section on the marriage history

**SECTION 4. MARRIAGE HISTORY.**

401. Now I have some questions about your married life. Are you now married, widowed, divorced or separated?

MARRIED  1 WIDOWED  2 DIVORCED  3 SEPARATED  4

402. Were you married only once, or more than once?

ONCE  1 MORE THAN ONCE  2

(SKIP TO TABLE, ASK 409, TICK APPROPRIATE BOX IN 410, AND CONTINUE.)

403. In what month and year were you and your husband married?

\_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_

(MONTH) (YEAR)

404. Does your husband ordinarily live in your household?

YES  1 NO  2

405. Is he away only for the time being, or have you stopped living together for good?

AWAY FOR TIME BEING  1 STOPPED FOR GOOD  2

406. In what month and year did you stop living together?

\_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_

(MONTH) (YEAR)

407. Have you been married more than once?

YES  1 NO  2

(SKIP TO 413)

408. How many times have you been married altogether?

\_\_\_\_\_  
(NUMBER OF TIMES)

INTERVIEWER: FOR EACH PAST MARRIAGE ASK 409-412, THEN SKIP TO 413.  
(IF CURRENTLY MARRIED, THE NUMBER OF ENTRIES WILL BE ONE LESS THAN THE ANSWER TO 408.)

7

1  2  4

5  7

9

10

11  13

15

16

17  19

21

22

**FORMER MARRIAGES**

	409. In what month and year did your (first, second ...) marriage begin?	410. How did the marriage end?	411. IF DIVORCE OR SEPARATION: In what month and year did you stop living together?	412. IF DEATH: In what month and year did he die?
1	MTH____ YR____	DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> 1 DIVORCE <input type="checkbox"/> 2 SEPARATION <input type="checkbox"/> 3	MTH____ YR____	MTH____ YR____
2	MTH____ YR____	DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> 1 DIVORCE <input type="checkbox"/> 2 SEPARATION <input type="checkbox"/> 3	MTH____ YR____	MTH____ YR____
3	MTH____ YR____	DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> 1 DIVORCE <input type="checkbox"/> 2 SEPARATION <input type="checkbox"/> 3	MTH____ YR____	MTH____ YR____
4	MTH____ YR____	DEATH <input type="checkbox"/> 1 DIVORCE <input type="checkbox"/> 2 SEPARATION <input type="checkbox"/> 3	MTH____ YR____	MTH____ YR____

23 25 27 28 30

32 34 36 37 39

41 43 45 46 48

50 52 54 55 57

413. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX:

PRESENCE OF OTHERS AT THIS POINT  
(TICK ALL THAT APPLY):

- NO OTHERS  0
- CHILDREN UNDER 10  1
- HUSBAND  2
- OTHER MALES  4
- OTHER FEMALES  8

59

**Table 12** Use of questions to obtain data on marriages and unions

Country	Base population <sup>a</sup>	Marital status		Probe on status of curr. married		Cohabitation		Dating of marriages		
		Current	History	Questions	Date	First	History	Beginning current marriage	Beginning previous marriages	Ending marriages
<b>Africa</b>										
Benin	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Cameroon	ALL	√*	√	√	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Ghana	ALL	√*	√	√*	√	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Ivory Coast	ALL	√*	√	√*	√*	√*	√	√*	√*	√*
Kenya	ALL	√*	√	√	x*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Lesotho	EM	√	√	√	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Nigeria	ALL	√*	√*	√*	x*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Senegal	ALL	√*	√	√*	√	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Egypt	EM	√*	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Mauritania	EM	√*	√*	√*	√*	x	x	√*	√*	√*
Morocco	ALL	√*	√*	√	√*	x	x	√*	√*	√*
Sudan N	EM	√	√	√	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Tunisia	EM	√	√	√	√*	√	x	√*	√*	√*
<b>Asia and Pacific</b>										
Jordan	EM	√*	√*	√	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Syria	EM	√	√	√	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Turkey	EM	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Yemen AR	EM	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Bangladesh	EM	√	√	√	√	**	x	√*	√*	√*
Nepal	EM	**	x	√	√	**	x	√*	x	**
Pakistan	EM	√	√	x	x	x	x	√*	√*	√*
Sri Lanka	EM	√	√	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√
Fiji	EM	**	√*	x	x	√	√	√	√	√
Indonesia	EM	√	√	√	√*	x	x	√*	√*	√*
Korea, Rep. of	EM	√	√	√	√*	x	x	√*	√*	√*
Malaysia	EM	√*	√*	√	x*	x	x	√	√	√
Philippines	EM	√*	√*	**	x	√*	x	√*	√*	√*
Thailand	EM	√	√	√	√	x	x	√	√	√
<b>Americas</b>										
Colombia	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√	**	√	√	√*	√*
Ecuador	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Paraguay	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Peru	EM	√*	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√*	√*
Venezuela	ALL	√*	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
Costa Rica	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√
Dominican Rep.	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√
Mexico	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√	√*	√	√	√	√
Panama	ALL	√*	√*	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√
Guyana	ALL	**	**	**	x*	√*	√	√*	√*	√*
Haiti	ALL	**	**	x	x	√*	√	√*	√*	√*
Jamaica	ALL	**	**	**	x*	√*	√	√*	√*	√*
Trinidad & Tob.	ALL	**	**	**	x*	√*	√	√*	√*	√*
<b>Europe</b>										
Portugal	EM	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√

<sup>a</sup>ALL = all women, including never-married; EM = ever-married women only.

√ = Obtained data equivalent to core question.

√\* = Obtained additional data and core information.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with core.

x\* = Did not ask core question but obtained equivalent data from other questions.

x = Omitted question altogether.

permanent separation. The permanently separated are then asked the date of that separation.

All countries asked these or similar questions except Fiji, Pakistan and Haiti, who completely omitted them. The Philippines also essentially omitted these questions since only women who were currently married, not pregnant and who had resumed sexual relations since the last pregnancy were asked approximately these questions, excepting the date, in the section on factors other than contraception. The three Caribbean countries, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago are also different from the core, since only legally married women were asked 'Are you and your husband living together as man and wife now?' If not, they were classified as separated, without any further questions. The currently common-law or visiting women were not probed about the current status of their union at all.

A few countries slightly modified the format of the questions. A few African countries allowed for the possibility of couples who were married living in different households (Benin, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Nigeria and Senegal) either by specifically allowing for such a code, or asking those not living together whether the husband/partner visits them.

Nigeria and Mauritania used the word 'now' or 'currently' when asking whether the husband lived in the household, rather than 'ordinarily' or 'usually'. Sri Lanka changed the phrase 'ordinarily living' to 'during the course of the last month did your husband stay in this house for at least one day?'

All Latin American countries excepting Venezuela modified the question on whether the separation was temporary or permanent to be an open-ended one, 'Why does your husband not live with you?', one of the possible answers being 'Stopped for good'. Egypt similarly broadened this question to 'What is the reason for his absence?' while Turkey probed those who are separated, asking whether their husband was in the military, in another country or away doing a job. Yemen AR classified those who are temporarily separated into two groups, inside and outside the country.

The core questionnaire simply asked for the calendar date of permanent separations, but in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire it was suggested that a probe on the duration of the marriage be made for those who did not know the calendar date. Several countries asked this probe question, mainly the more recent surveys: Benin, Ivory Coast, Lesotho, Mauritania, Morocco, Sudan and Tunisia in Africa; Indonesia in Asia; Ecuador, Paraguay and Peru in Latin America; and all five Middle Eastern countries. Benin and Cameroon further probed for the number of years ago. Korea asked for the age at the separation and the special dating procedures using type of calendar or season, were also used. A few countries did not ask date in this form, but obtained it from the marriage history: Kenya, Nigeria, Malaysia, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago.

### 5.3 COHABITATION

The WFS surveys aimed to cover all forms of reproductive unions, not only marriages sanctioned by law or church. Thus although the core question was designed for a culture in which legal marriage was the only recognized form of

union, the wording of questions (and the structure of the marriage history itself, in a few cases) were modified for countries where other, non-legalized unions exist. A number of countries, indicated as *not* asking about cohabitation in table 12, did in fact use only the core questions, limited to dating legal marriages. In these countries, the limitation to sanctioned marriages only implies very little, if any, understatement of exposure for intercourse, and omitting the subject of sexual relations outside of marriage has the advantage of not upsetting respondents.

In other countries, attempts were made to measure the actual date of beginning cohabitation, for different reasons: in some Asian and Middle Eastern countries cohabitation may not begin until a substantial period after the marriage ceremony, while in Latin American, African and Caribbean countries other non-legalized unions often occur before or instead of marriage.

All Latin American countries except Colombia phrased the questions on dates of the current union and of previous unions, in the history, as the date the couple started living together. This meant that the date of *first* cohabitation could be obtained, regardless of whether the woman was in only one or more than one union. In addition several countries also probed women who were currently not in a union, about whether they were living with a partner. In Colombia the phrasing of the question places some doubt on its success in getting this response, which was the intention of the questions.<sup>6</sup> Depending on whether they were currently married or in a consensual union, women were asked the date they were married or began the consensual union. It is possible that women who had one partner only, but who lived with him before legalizing the union, may not report the date they first started living together, but the date of the legal marriage. On the other hand, depending on the degree of probing which interviewers were trained to do, this problem could have been eliminated. Fiji, Portugal and a few African countries (Benin, Cameroon, Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho and Nigeria) used roughly the same approach as in Latin America, often specifying 'lived together as man and wife'. In the case of Nigeria alone, an additional probe to check that the date or age given was the time when sexual relations began, was specified in the questionnaire. Benin and Cameroon also obtained the date of first sexual relations, but as a separate question from the date of the first union. A group of countries specified that it was the date of marriage consummation that was needed (using the Arabic term 'zifaf' to denote the ceremony preceding this event): Sudan, Egypt, Jordan, Syria and Yemen AR did so. Turkey and Sri Lanka, which also used the term 'living together' for the current marriage and in the marriage history, were also presumably attempting to get the dates of consummation, rather than that of any earlier ceremony.

Several other countries used more detailed probing to obtain the date of the first union. Three Asian countries, Bangladesh, Nepal and Philippines obtained the date of marriage and also specifically asked whether the couple began living together right after marriage (or before marriage, also, in the case of Philippines) and, if not,

<sup>6</sup>In the case of Colombia, women who were currently married were asked the date of their marriage rather than the date they had started living together. In the history of past unions, the phrase 'living together' is not specified.

obtained the length of the gap between marriage and cohabitation. In addition, Tunisia asked for length of interval between legal contract and start of cohabitation, recording the two possible answers in separate locations, to avoid confusion.

Bangladesh asked only currently married women this question, about their current marriage, while Nepal asked all women, but phrased the question in terms of 'your marriage', given the assumption that no more than one marriage occurred, as mentioned earlier.

The Philippines obtained the date of cohabitation of the first union for all 'formal' or legal unions. Mexico probed all married unions, both current and previous ones, and both in the case of marriages in church and civil marriages, about whether they had lived together before the marriage and, if so, when they had started living together. Sudan and Yemen AR asked whether menstruation began before or after the beginning of married life, and the duration of the gap, which would help in determining the true age that exposure began. All other countries which collected the age at menstruation would also be able to apply this control.

Ivory Coast asked a series of questions on the first union, or the current union, if it was the first. Interviewers determined whether the first union began as one sanctioned by custom (as opposed to legally registered or free unions) and then asked women with such unions the year their husband gave the 'boisson or the kola' for the marriage, or their age at the time. Women were then asked whether they went with their husband on that day, and if not, then the month and year that they began to live together. Women whose first union began as a civil marriage were asked whether they lived with their husband before marriage, and if so, for how long, or their age when they began to live together. Both this group (civil marriage) and women whose first unions was a 'free' union were asked whether they had sexual relations with their husband or partner before beginning to live together, and if so, for how long before. The four Caribbean countries, Guyana, Haiti, Jamaica and Trinidad & Tobago, by recognizing all the various forms of unions with specific names, and probing all women for unions of each type, essentially obtained the same information as Ivory Coast, the date of beginning the first regular sexual union (as opposed to very brief sexual relationships). These four Caribbean countries went one step further than other countries by asking about each different type of union with each partner, developing special history tables to record this data.

#### 5.4 DATING OF BEGINNING AND ENDING MARRIAGES/UNIONS

In the core questionnaire the only questions on dates are straightforward ones on the month and year of the current marriage, and the month and year of beginning and ending past marriages. No probes were suggested for women who did not know the calendar date. Subsequently, in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire, probes were suggested; that age at the time of the marriage be used as an alternative for dates of beginning marriages, and that duration of the marriage be used as an alternative for dates of ending marriages.

In the case of the date of the current union, 11 countries asked the core question on calendar date only – countries without asterisks in the relevant column of table 12. Five

countries asked the calendar date and the age at marriage for all women – Tunisia, Korea, Pakistan, Philippines and Turkey. Most countries who used a probe for those who did not know the date used the one recommended, age at the event: CM, GH, IC, KE, LS, MA, MO, NG, SD, BD, ID, PK, GY, HT, JM, TT, EC, PY, PE, EG, SY and YM.<sup>7</sup>

In addition, Benin and Jordan asked age and if no answer was obtained, further asked the number of years ago. Nepal asked women who did not know the date the number of years ago the marriage took place. Pakistan further probed those who did not know age or date about how long they had been married. Senegal used dates which were obtained at the household interview and entered on the AGEVEN charts, but verified them with the respondent at the individual interview. A few other countries also used dating or AGEVEN charts to assist in dating marriages in relation to other events – Benin, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Mauritania, Morocco, Nigeria, Senegal, Sudan, Haiti, Indonesia, Korea, Egypt, Syria, Turkey and Yemen AR.

In dating the beginning of marriages other than the current one, again most countries which used a probe used the one recommended, age at the event: GH, KE, LS, MA, MO, NG, SD, TN, ID, PK, PH, GY, HT, JM, TT, CO, EC, PE, EG, SY and YM. Cameroon and Bangladesh asked the number of years ago instead, while Jordan used two probes, age and years ago, and Benin also used two probes years ago and duration of the marriage. Korea and Turkey asked the age as well as the date for all previous marriages. A number of countries used the core questions alone, with no probe specified: FJ, MY, SL, TH, PT, CR, DR, MX, PA, PY and VE.

In the case of dates of ending marriages, again a few countries asked only the calendar date as recommended in the core questionnaire: FJ, MY, SL, TH, PT, CR, DR, MX, PA, PY, PE, and VE. Although Nepal also asked the core question, it was only in regard to women not currently married, because of the assumption that women had one marriage only. The recommended probe, duration of the union, was used by several countries: BN, GH, KE, LS, MA, MO, NG, SD, TN, HT, EG, JO, SY, TK and YM. The three Caribbean countries GY, JM and TT asked duration if the date was not known, and they also asked the length of the period spent without a partner. Indonesia asked all women the duration of their union, not only those who did not know the date, and also asked the length of the period before the next marriage began. The Cameroon used years ago as the probe if the husband died, and used duration as the probe for separated or divorced women. Pakistan and Bangladesh asked the number of years ago that the union ended, for those who did not know the date, while Colombia, Ecuador, Ivory Coast and Philippines asked age at the time the union ended. Korea asked all women, not only those who did not know the date, their age at the time the union ended.

<sup>7</sup> BN = Benin; CM = Cameroon; GH = Ghana; IC = Ivory Coast; KE = Kenya; LS = Lesotho; MA = Mauritania; MO = Morocco; NG = Nigeria; SN = Senegal; SD = Sudan; TN = Tunisia; BD = Bangladesh; FJ = Fiji; ID = Indonesia; KR = Korea; MY = Malaysia; NP = Nepal; PK = Pakistan; PH = Philippines; SL = Sri Lanka; TH = Thailand; GY = Guyana; HT = Haiti; JM = Jamaica; TT = Trinidad & Tobago; PT = Portugal; CO = Colombia; CR = Costa Rica; DR = Dominican Republic; EC = Ecuador; MX = Mexico; PA = Panama; PY = Paraguay; PE = Peru; VE = Venezuela; EG = Egypt; JO = Jordan; SY = Syria; TK = Turkey; YM = Yemen AR.

## 5.5 POLYGAMY

The topic of polygamy was examined in several African countries: Benin, Cameroon, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Lesotho, Mauritania, Nigeria and Senegal.

	Number of co-wives	Rank or order
Benin	√*	√
Cameroon	√	√
Ghana	√	×
Ivory Coast	√	√
Kenya	√	√
Lesotho	√	√
Mauritania	√	√
Nigeria	√*	√
Senegal	√	**

√ = Asked the question as expected.

√\* = Asked the question as well as obtained additional information.

\*\* = Asked question in a non-comparable way.

× = Did not ask this question.

All nine countries asked the question on number of co-wives of the current partner; in addition Benin and Nigeria also obtained the number of co-wives in each earlier union, for all ever-married women. The question on the rank of the respondent among the current wives was asked by all countries except Ghana. However, Senegal only asked women in married unions this question, not those in con-

sensual unions. Mauritania further asked women whether their husband had children with any other women.

## 5.6 ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

Sudan asked a few questions on female circumcision. Women were asked their age when circumcised, with 'never circumcised' being one possible answer. Those who had been circumcised were further asked who performed the operation (physician, midwife, other) and the type of circumcision (Pharaonic, Sunna and other). Egypt and Yemen AR asked whether there was any blood relationship between the respondent and her husband, and the type of relationship, while Tunisia asked only whether there was any relationship.

Haiti, alone among the four Caribbean countries with complicated union patterns, asked a few questions about the current partner's past union experience. The respondent was asked whether her partner had any other children, apart from those he had from his union with her. She was also asked if her partner had any other spouse or relations with any other women. Finally, the name of the partner who was the father of each child was also obtained in the pregnancy history, making it possible to validate the information obtained in the union history against the pregnancy history. Malaysia obtained the number of sons and daughters given birth to in each earlier marriage, which could also be checked against the pregnancy history.



## 6 Knowledge and Use of Contraception

This aspect of fertility, voluntary use of contraception, was also a central part of the questionnaire (table 13). The core questionnaire asked all interviewed women about knowledge of methods and ever-use of methods; but asked non-pregnant currently married women only, about current use, and if they were not using about use in the interval since the last birth. Countries which used the fertility regulation module further asked women with one or more children about use in the closed interval. In addition, some countries used the abortion module, which asked questions about knowledge and use of abortion and attitudes concerning abortion. In this chapter we discuss the use of questions on knowledge and ever-use of contraception, on abortion, on current use, open interval use and closed interval use, in that order. However, a few general issues are discussed first.

The recommendation that all interviewed women be asked questions on contraception was meant for samples of ever-married women, and was followed in all such cases. However, where the sample included never-married women, not all countries asked this group questions on knowledge and use of contraception. All-woman samples which excluded the never-married are Guyana, Jamaica, Trinidad & Tobago, Costa Rica, Ecuador and Panama. Morocco asked the never-married the full set of questions about knowledge of contraception, but not about use of contraception. As table 14 shows, 12 countries with all-woman samples asked the never-married the usual questions on knowledge and use.

The positioning of other questions on family planning (eg sources of supply) may have some effect on answers to questions on contraception. If such questions precede the usual questions on contraception, it is possible that the respondent may become more aware of the subject the interviewer is talking about, and the proportion of positive responses to questions on knowledge and use may increase. As table 14 shows, most countries in fact asked family planning questions *after* the section on knowledge and use, but a few asked questions before — Trinidad & Tobago, Colombia, Costa Rica, Mexico, Panama and Venezuela.

### 6.1 KNOWLEDGE AND EVER-USE OF CONTRACEPTION

The core questions on knowledge and ever-use of contraception distinguished between spontaneous answers to an open-ended question and responses to probes on specific methods.<sup>8</sup> As shown in table 13, methods mentioned voluntarily by the respondent were dealt with first, then probe questions were asked on each method not volunteered. The usual methods were: pill, IUD, other female scientific,

douche, condom, rhythm, withdrawal, abstinence, male sterilization and female sterilization. Sterilization was treated differently in that use was not asked at this point, but later, as an aspect of current use.

#### Format of questions

Most countries used this format for questioning, but Fiji did not ask the open-ended questions, and Mauritania and Pakistan did not use the method-specific probe questions. Portugal used a different approach; the usual questions were asked, but only to determine knowledge. Ever-use was obtained indirectly from the history of use in each birth interval, but since only the last method used in each interval was recorded, some understatement of ever-use probably occurred. A few countries broadened the open-ended questions to include traditional as well as modern (or 'European') methods; Cameroon, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Mauritania, Morocco and Nigeria did so. Several countries mentioned specific traditional methods: Cameroon mentioned herbs, bark from trees and special drinks; Nigeria asked about herbs, armbands/waistbands/neckbands, rings on finger and charms; while Indonesia asked about herbs, massage and inversion of the uterus. Apart from the interviewer mentioning specific traditional methods by name, a final open-ended probe question on knowledge and use of any other methods, requesting their names would also obtain information on traditional methods, and it was also asked by most countries. The only exceptions were Mauritania and Pakistan, while Kenya narrowed this question to other traditional methods only, rather than simply any other methods.

#### Omission and addition of methods

Table 14, which shows the use of method-specific probes by country, indicates that methods were omitted by some countries, apart from Mauritania and Pakistan, which omitted all method-specific probes:

Method	Omitted by
Pill, IUD, condom	None
Other female sci.	Nepal
Douche	Malaysia, Nepal
Rhythm	Nepal
Withdrawal	Senegal, Nepal
Abstinence	Cameroon, Tunisia, Portugal, Dominican Republic, Mexico, Paraguay, Venezuela

'Injections' were added to the list of probed methods, as shown in table 14, by 23 countries. Fiji asked about female scientific methods and douche in a single question; thus, although both are covered, they cannot be separated in analysis.

<sup>8</sup>This information was not transferred to the early standard recode tapes, but it is now current practice to do so, and updated versions of early tapes will include it.

**Table 13** Core questionnaire section on knowledge and use of contraception

**SECTION 3. CONTRACEPTIVE KNOWLEDGE AND USE**

301. Now I want to talk about a somewhat different topic. As you may know, there are various ways that a couple can delay the next pregnancy or avoid pregnancy. Do you know of, or have you heard of, any of these ways or methods?

YES

NO   
(SKIP TO INSTRUCTION ABOVE 304)

302. Which methods do you know of? \_\_\_\_\_  
*PROBE: Do you know of any others?*  
*INTERVIEWER: RECORD ANSWER, AND THEN PROCEED TO TICK BOX(ES) IN COL.1 CORRESPONDING TO THE METHOD(S) MENTIONED. FOR EACH METHOD SO TICKED, EXCEPT STERILIZATION, ASK:*  
303. Have you ever used (METHOD)?  
*(REFER TO METHOD IN SAME WORDS USED BY R IN 302. TICK RESPONSE IN COL.3 CORRESPONDING TO THE PARTICULAR METHOD.)*  
*NOW ASK 304-314, IN TURN, SKIPPING THOSE METHODS TICKED IN COL.1. PREFACE THE QUESTIONING WITH:*  
There are some other methods which you have not mentioned, and I would like to find out if you might have heard of them.

COL. 1 FROM 302	FOR THOSE WHO SAID "NO" TO 301. PREFACE Q.304 WITH: Just to make sure, let me describe some methods to see if you have heard of them.	COL. 2 EVER HEARD OF	COL. 3 EVER USED
<input type="checkbox"/> PILL	304. One way a woman can delay the next pregnancy, or avoid getting pregnant, is to take a pill every day. Have you ever heard of this method? <i>(TICK RESPONSE IN COL. 2). IF NO, SKIP TO NEXT UNTICKED METHOD. IF YES: Have you ever used this method? (TICK RESPONSE IN COL. 3)</i>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> IUD	305. A woman may have a loop or coil of plastic or metal, the intrauterine device (IUD), inserted in her womb by a doctor and left there. Have you ever heard of this method? <i>(AS ABOVE)</i> . IF YES: Have you ever used this method? <i>(AS ABOVE)</i>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>	YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	2	4	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5		7	
<input type="checkbox"/>			
9			
<input type="checkbox"/>			
10			
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	12	13	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	15	16	

COL. 1		COL. 2	COL. 3
FROM 302		EVER HEARD OF	EVER USED
<input type="checkbox"/> OTHER FEMALE SCIENTIFIC	306. Women may also use other methods to avoid getting pregnant, such as placing a diaphragm or tampon or sponge in themselves before sex, or using foam tablets, or jelly or cream. Have you ever heard of any of these methods? IF YES: Have you ever used any of these methods ?	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2
<input type="checkbox"/> DOUCHE	307. Some women wash themselves immediately after sex, with water or perhaps some other liquid. Have you ever heard of this method to avoid getting pregnant ? IF YES: Have you ever used this method?	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2
<input type="checkbox"/> CONDOM	308. There are also some methods men use so that their wives will not get pregnant. Some men wear a condom (e.g. Durex, rubber, safe, or prophylactic) during sex. Have you ever heard of this method ? IF YES: Did you and your husband ever use this method?	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2
<input type="checkbox"/> RHYTHM	309. Some couples avoid having sex on particular days of the month when the woman is most able to become pregnant. This is called the safe period or rhythm method. Have you ever heard of this method? IF YES: Did you and your husband ever do this?	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2
<input type="checkbox"/> WITHDRAWAL	310. Some men practise withdrawal, that is, they are careful and pull out before climax. Have you ever heard of this method? IF YES: Did you and your husband ever use this method ?	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2

17  18  19

20  21  22

23  24  25

26  27  28

29  30  31

COL. 1		COL. 2	COL. 3
FROM 302		EVER HEARD OF	EVER USED
<input type="checkbox"/> ABSTAIN	311. Another way is to go without sex for several months or longer to avoid getting pregnant. Have you ever heard of this method being used? IF YES: Have you ever done this to avoid getting pregnant?	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2
<input type="checkbox"/> FEMALE STERIL.	312. Some women have an operation, called sterilization, such as having their tubes tied, in order not to have any more children. Have you ever heard of this method ? (TICK RESPONSE IN COL. 2)	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	
<input type="checkbox"/> MALE STERIL.	313. Some men have a sterilization operation, called vasectomy, so that their wife will not have more children. Have you ever heard of this method ? (TICK RESPONSE IN COL. 2)	YES <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <input type="checkbox"/> 2	
<input type="checkbox"/> OTHER	314. Have you ever heard of any other methods which women or men use to avoid pregnancy ?  IF YES: (SPECIFY) _____  FOR EACH METHOD, ASK: Did you and your husband ever use this method so that you would not get pregnant?		YES <sub>1</sub> <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <sub>1</sub> <input type="checkbox"/> 2 YES <sub>2</sub> <input type="checkbox"/> 1 NO <sub>2</sub> <input type="checkbox"/> 2

32  33  34

35  36

37  38

39  41

42  44

315. INTERVIEWER: TICK APPROPRIATE BOX.  
AT LEAST ONE  1 NOT A SINGLE  2  
YES IN COL. 3 YES IN COL. 3  
(SKIP TO 401)

45

316. I want to make sure I have the correct information. Have you ever done anything or tried in any way to delay or avoid getting pregnant ?  
YES  1 NO  2  
(SKIP TO 401)

317. What method was that? \_\_\_\_\_

46

47

Table 14 Questions on knowledge and ever-use of specific methods of contraception

Country	Base population <sup>a</sup>	Position of family planning questions <sup>b</sup>	Spontaneous knowledge and use Q301/303	Probe questions on specific methods <sup>c</sup>													Sterilization				Abortion: knowledge and use
				Pill Q304	IUD Q305	OFS Q306	Douche Q307	Condom Q308	Rhythm Q309	Withd. Q310	Abst. Q311	F. St. Q312	M. St. Q313	Other Q314	Injection	Final probe Q315/317	Use of female Q510	Contra-ception Q511	Use of male Q512	Date M F	
Africa																					
Benin	ALL	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	x	√	x	√	x	x	x	x	√
Cameroon	ALL	NONE	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	x	x	√	√*	x	x	x	x	x	√
Ghana	ALL	AFTER	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√*	x	√	√	√	√	x	√*
Ivory Coast	ALL	AFTER	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	x	√	x	√	x	x	x	x	√
Kenya	ALL	AFTER	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	**	√	√*	√*	√	√	x	√
Lesotho	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√	√	√	x	√
Nigeria	ALL	DURING	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√	√	√	√	√
Senegal	ALL	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	x	x	√	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Egypt	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Mauritania	EM	NONE	√*	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	√	x	x	x	x	x	x
Morocco	ALL*	AFTER	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	x	√*	√	√	x	√	x
Sudan N	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√	√	x	x	x
Tunisia	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√*	√*	√	√	√*	x*	√*	x	x	√
Asia and Pacific																					
Jordan	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	x	x*
Syria	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√*	√	√	√	x	x
Turkey	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	x	√	**	√*	√*	x	x
Yemen AR	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√	√*	√	√	x	x
Bangladesh	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
Nepal	EM	AFTER	√	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	x
Pakistan	EM	AFTER	√	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	√	√*	√*	x	x	x	**	x	**	√*	√*
Sri Lanka	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
Fiji	EM	AFTER	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	√	√	√*	x*	√*	√	x
Indonesia	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
Korea, Rep. of	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√*	√*
Malaysia	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√	√	√*	x*
Philippines	EM	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√*
Thailand	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	x	x
Americas																					
Colombia	ALL	BEFORE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Ecuador	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Paraguay	ALL	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Peru	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Venezuela	ALL	BEFORE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√*	√	√	√	√	x
Costa Rica	EM	BEFORE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Dominican Rep.	ALL	AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√*	√	√	√	√	x*
Mexico	ALL	BEFORE	√	√	√*	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	x*
Panama	EM	BEFORE & AFTER	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x	√	√	√	√	√	x*
Guyana	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x
Haiti	ALL	DURING	√*	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√*	√*	√	x	√	√	√	√	x	√
Jamaica	EM	NONE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	x
Trinidad & Tob.	EM	BEFORE	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
Europe																					
Portugal	EM	AFTER	√	√*	√*	√*	√*	√*	√*	√*	x	√	√	√*	x	x	√*	√	√	√	x

<sup>a</sup> ALL = All women, including the never-married; EM = Ever-married only. ALL\* - See text for explanation.

<sup>b</sup> Position of family planning source questions relative to knowledge and use of contraception.

<sup>c</sup> Methods abbreviated: OFS = Other Female Scientific; Withd. = Withdrawal; Abst. = Abstinence; F. St. = Female Sterilization; M. St. = Male Sterilization; Other = Other methods.

√ = Obtained data equivalent to core question.

√\* = Obtained additional data and core information.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with core.

x = Omitted question altogether.

x\* = Did not ask direct question, but equivalent information obtained indirectly from other questions.

## Treatment of sterilization

Only knowledge of sterilization was asked in the table of methods in the core questionnaire but use was ascertained later, in the fertility regulation section. Exposed women could report sterilization as the current method or, if not, in the case of female sterilization, women who considered themselves infecund or who were not currently married, were also asked about use; in the case of male sterilization, currently married, infecund, non-sterilized women were asked if their husbands had been sterilized. As table 14 shows, a few countries omitted all questions on sterilization – Benin, Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Mauritania and Senegal – while Morocco omitted male sterilization only. Mauritania listed male and female sterilization in the list of methods, but only spontaneous answers from the open-ended question would be coded here. This would also apply to the other countries which omitted these two methods, in the sense that knowledge and use of sterilization may be volunteered, and entered as 'other' methods. Women who were sterilized were further asked whether the operation had been done to stop childbearing. Almost all countries which asked whether the respondent was sterilized also asked this question: exceptions were Tunisia, Fiji and Pakistan. However, in the case of Tunisia and Fiji, the question itself defines sterilization as an operation to stop having children, suggesting that a further question on the purpose is unnecessary. Pakistan not only does not have a similar statement, but it also restricts the questions on use of male and female sterilization only to those who voluntarily mention knowing these methods, unlike other countries where all infecund or non-currently married women were asked.

FOTCAF countries<sup>9</sup> also used slightly different base populations for these two methods, but the base was increased, not reduced. For those countries, regardless of fecundity status, all non-pregnant ever-married women who knew the method (from a probe question) were asked about their use of sterilization, and all currently married women who knew the method (male sterilization) were asked whether their husband was sterilized: Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho, Nigeria, Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR followed this approach. Tunisia, also a FOTCAF country, excluded only currently pregnant women from the latter question. Fiji used the largest base population of all – all ever-married women who knew of the methods (from a probe question) were asked if they had used them. Korea and Malaysia widened their base slightly: while sterilized women were not usually asked whether their husband was also sterilized, these two countries did not use this exclusion. Turkey reversed the questions from their usual order, asking first whether husbands were sterilized and, if so, excluding women from the other question: this does not apply to currently married non-pregnant women who had reported earlier that they were currently using sterilization, however.

The date of sterilization, recommended as part of the fertility regulation and family planning modules, was obtained in 24 countries for both male and females sterilized, and in one country, Morocco, for women only. However, the place of sterilization, included in the family planning module, was asked in only a few cases: for female

sterilization in Morocco, Haiti and Panama, and for both males and female sterilization in Egypt.

## Final probe question on use of contraception

At the end of the series of method-specific probe questions, a final question was asked of those who had not so far reported using any method, to make sure they had never used contraception. A few countries omitted this probe altogether: Senegal, Tunisia, Pakistan, Philippines and Portugal. A few all-women samples treated single women differently: Kenya omitted them from the probe question, as did Morocco, which did not ask single women any questions on use, while the Dominican Republic and Venezuela omitted women who had never had sexual relations from this question. Cameroon again mentioned both traditional and modern methods.

## 6.2 ABORTION

In an earlier section, questions on induced abortion, in relation to non-live pregnancies, were discussed. The subject is brought up here because additional information was obtained by direct questions on abortion as a method, and about attitudes towards the use of abortion. The symbol (X\*) in table 14 indicates those countries where the only information on knowledge or use of abortion derives from the probe question on whether, for non-live pregnancies of under 7 months duration, a doctor or someone else had done something to end the pregnancy: Ghana, Korea, Malaysia, Colombia, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Mexico, Panama, Peru, Egypt, Jordan and Turkey. As discussed below, some of these countries also asked questions on attitudes towards abortion, but no other direct questions on abortion as a method were asked.

Countries with the symbol (✓) in table 14 did ask questions other than the one concerning 'other' pregnancies, and in some cases also asked this question (see table 10). Benin asked about knowledge of traditional or modern methods, which methods were known, whether the methods had ever been used, and if so, which methods. Cameroon asked about traditional methods of abortion only, which ones were known and, if used, which ones had been used. Ivory Coast asked first whether any traditional methods of abortion were known, and only if none were reported was a general probe on any methods of abortion asked; names of methods and which ones were used, were also obtained. Kenya, Nigeria and Nepal asked only whether the woman had heard of abortion. Two of the country-specific methods for which knowledge and use were obtained (by Indonesia) were actually methods of abortion: massage and inversion of the uterus. Haiti and Sri Lanka asked about knowledge and use of any method of abortion. The Philippines asked whether the respondent had ever done anything to prevent giving birth. Of the other countries indicated in table 14, Tunisia and Pakistan asked not only if abortion had been used, but how many times; while Bangladesh and Trinidad & Tobago asked these two questions and obtained the dates for each abortion, as well as asking whether there had been any other abortion.

Questions on attitudes towards abortion were asked by 13 countries (see table 15). The abortion module recommended the first seven conditions in the table, but the last three

<sup>9</sup>Countries which used the Factors Other Than Contraception Affecting Fertility module.

Table 15 Questions on approval of abortion under specific conditions

Country	Danger to life	Danger to health	Rape	Defective birth	Woman unmarried	Cannot afford child	Woman wants abortion	Pregnant while using contrac.	Not using but child unwanted	Incest
Africa										
Tunisia	✓	✓	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—
Asia and Pacific										
Jordan	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—
Turkey	✓	—	—	✓	—	✓	✓	—	—	—
Bangladesh	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—
Nepal	—	✓	—	—	✓	✓	—	✓	✓	—
Pakistan	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	—	—
Korea, Rep. of	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	—	—
Malaysia	—	✓	✓	—	✓	✓	—	✓	✓	—
Philippines	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—
Americas										
Colombia	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—
Costa Rica	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—
Panama	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	✓
Trinidad & Tob.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

✓ = Asked about this condition.

— = Did not ask about this condition.

were added by a few countries. The module also phrased the introductory questions as 'Assuming it (abortion) were legal, would you approve or disapprove . . .,' to reduce objections based on legality alone. Eight countries did not use this phrase, presumably because in some cases abortion was legal and well known to be so: Bangladesh, Korea, Malaysia, Pakistan, Colombia, Costa Rica, Panama and Turkey. In contrast, Tunisia went further and informed the respondent that abortion for pregnancies under three months was legal, before asking questions on approval. Trinidad & Tobago extended the phrase to 'if it were legal to have an abortion by a doctor . . .'.

A few countries used non-standard approaches. Korea only asked one general question, but graded the answers as 'strongly approve', 'disapprove', 'strongly disapprove' and 'depends' (which was further probed) instead of the usual set of conditions, coded as approve/disapprove. Nepal first asked the respondent whether she had heard of abortion, and only those who answered yes were asked the conditional questions on approval. The approach of the Philippines was different — women were first asked a general question about approval, with no conditions specified. Those who approved were not asked any questions about specific conditions, presumably on the assumption that they would approve in all situations. Those who disapproved were further asked if there were any circumstances under which they would approve. If so, they, and any who answered 'depends' on the first question, were then asked about approval under specific conditions.

In the case of the four countries with partial or full all-woman samples, (Trinidad & Tobago, Colombia, Costa Rica and Panama) only Colombia asked women who had never been in a union the questions on abortion.

A few countries asked extra questions on the subject of abortion. Korea asked women, 'Do you think you could have an abortion for yourself in the future if you needed to? Would you say yes, no, absolutely no?', also providing a code for 'depends' and a further probe for 'depends' on the reasons for uncertainty. Malaysia asked, 'Do you think abortion is a simple or complicated process?', with the answers coded as 'simple', 'complicated', 'depends' and 'don't know' and with a further probe for 'depends'. Women were also asked if they thought abortion a safe or dangerous process, again probing those who answered 'depends'. Trinidad & Tobago asked respondents if the law should be changed to make it easier for a woman to have an abortion. Both Trinidad & Tobago and Turkey asked who assisted at the last abortion. Turkey's codes were 'no one', 'private doctor', 'hospital doctor', 'government midwife', 'traditional midwife' and 'some other person'. Trinidad & Tobago's codes were: 'happened by itself', 'did it myself', 'done by doctor for medical reasons', 'done because baby not wanted then', 'with help (from doctor/trained nurse/unqualified person/other', coded separately) and 'some other person'. Turkey also asked how this last abortion had been performed, coding answers as: 'aspiration', 'D & C', 'medicine taken orally', 'injection', 'material placed in uterus', 'lifting heavy objects', and 'some other means'.

### 6.3 CURRENT USE OF CONTRACEPTION

Current use and the method used was asked in all countries. In the core questionnaire only currently married, non-pregnant ever-users are asked about current use. Most countries which used the FOTCAF module except Benin, Nigeria, Haiti and Philippines (see table 16) made use of additional information from this module, and further excluded women who had not resumed sexual relations after the last pregnancy. Because only ever-users are asked about current use, the way in which ever-use was collected can influence the reporting of current use. Where probe questions on particular methods were omitted in the set of questions on knowledge and use, for example, this could mean that some ever-users went unrecorded. The two countries with an important non-comparability in this regard are Mauritania and Pakistan, where all method-specific probe questions were omitted. A different source of non-comparability arises from the meaning of the word 'current' to the respondent – whether it would be interpreted narrowly, in the range of a few days, or as intended, more widely, to cover methods whose use is determined by the menstrual cycle or methods which are used at intercourse, which will vary in frequency. Pakistan was again an exception, asking whether contraception had been used in the last month, rather than using the word 'current'.

In almost all countries with all-woman samples, never-married women were not asked about current use even if they had had sexual relations or borne any children. Cameroon was the only country to ask never-married women who had had sexual relations whether they were currently using contraception.

### 6.4 USE IN THE OPEN INTERVAL

#### Basic questions and base populations

Current users were considered to be using in the open interval, thus the usual base population for this subject was: (1) currently married ever-users who were not currently using, who were not pregnant (pregnant women were not considered to have an open interval) and who considered themselves fecund; and (2) not currently married women who were not pregnant or sterilized. Countries which used either the family planning (FP) module or the fertility regulation (FR) module modified the second category to include all ever-users in the not currently married group. FOTCAF countries asked only the first group, and further restricted it to women who had resumed sexual relations.

While the open interval was normally defined by the last birth, for non-pregnant women, FOTCAF countries, Korea and Malaysia used the last pregnancy, the outcome of which might have been a live birth or a miscarriage or still birth.

Fiji was the only country which completely omitted questions on open interval use. Seven countries used the restricted base population recommended in the core questionnaire (see table 16), while another eight used the FOTCAF module base. Thirteen countries used the FR module base and seven used the FP module base, both of which had a wider definition than the core questionnaire or FOTCAF module. Five countries introduced different variations, however:

- Benin – the definition of open interval was the period since the last live birth, and all ever-users with one or more children (including pregnant, not currently married and single women) who were not currently using were asked, but childless women were not asked about use in the open interval, even though they may have been ever-users who were not currently using
- Cameroon – the FOTCAF exclusion of post-partum abstainers was applied, but unlike other FOTCAF countries women not currently married (including single women who had begun sexual relations) were not excluded
- Pakistan – women who were not currently married were not asked any questions. However, since the fecundity question was not asked in Pakistan all currently married ever-users who were not currently using and not pregnant were asked about use
- Trinidad & Tobago – the core base population was used for currently married women; those who were not currently married or infecund were asked only the last method used, without obtaining the interval, ie whether used in the open interval was not obtained.

The questions asked also depended on whether the core or a module was used. The core questions were whether the respondent had used since her last birth, and if so, the method used. Altogether 18 countries asked only the core question, as seen in table 16 – these were core and FOTCAF countries and three of the countries with different base populations, Benin, Cameroon and Pakistan.

#### Added questions – why stopped and duration of use

The FR module expanded these core questions and also asked women of the first base group who wanted more children and who had used any method other than abstinence in the open interval, but who were not currently using, 'Did you stop because you want to become pregnant?' Six FR countries asked the question exactly as recommended, but a few (Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Panama and Peru) changed it to the open-ended question later suggested in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire, 'Why did you stop using?' Although basically FR countries, Indonesia, Korea and Malaysia did not skip out users of abstinence, and they further probed those who had not stopped to become pregnant about why they had stopped. In addition, Korea did not exclude women who wanted no more children or who were undecided, essentially using the same base population as FP countries, as described below.

In addition to the two core questions, the FP module asked the first base group (without skipping out users of abstinence and including *all* open-interval users who were not currently using<sup>10</sup>) the open-ended question, 'Why did

<sup>10</sup>That is, including women who want more, want no more or who were undecided, unlike the FR module which asked only those who wanted more children.

**Table 16** Use of questions on current use, open interval use, closed interval use, timing of first use and intention to use in the future

Country	Current use		Open interval use					Closed interval use					First method used	Number living childr. at first use	Use in future		
	FOTCAF exclusion <sup>a</sup>	Use and method	Base pop. <sup>b</sup>	Use	FRM why stopped	FPM Time used	Why stopped	Use	Stopped before pregnant	FRM why stopped	FPM Time used	Why stopped			Approval?	No	Yes
<b>Africa</b>																	
Benin	no	✓	DIFF	✓	x	x	x	✓*	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	**	x
Cameroon	yes	✓*	DIFF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Ghana	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Ivory Coast	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Kenya	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Lesotho	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Nigeria	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓*	x
Senegal	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Egypt	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓*
Mauritania	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	✓	x	x	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Morocco	no	✓	FRM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
Sudan N	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Tunisia	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓*	x
<b>Asia and Pacific</b>																	
Jordan	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Syria	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Turkey	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Yemen AR	yes	✓	FOTCAF	✓	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Bangladesh	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓	**	x	✓	✓*	✓	**	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Nepal	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓*	x	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pakistan	no	✓	DIFF	✓	x	x	x	**	**	x	x	**	x	x	x	✓*	x
Sri Lanka	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Fiji	no	✓	NONE	x	x	x	x	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓*	**
Indonesia	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓*	x	x	✓	✓*	✓*	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Korea, Rep. of	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓*	x	x	**	✓*	✓*	x	x	**	✓*	✓*	✓*	x
Malaysia	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓*	**	x	**	✓*	✓*	**	x	**	✓*	✓*	✓*	x
Philippines	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	**	✓	✓	✓*	x	**	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓	x
Thailand	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
<b>Americas</b>																	
Colombia	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
Ecuador	no	✓	FRM	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	x
Paraguay	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
Peru	no	✓	FRM	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	x
Venezuela	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
Costa Rica	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x	✓
Dominican Rep.	no	✓	FRM	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Mexico	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Panama	no	✓	FRM	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	x
Guyana	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Haiti	no	✓	CORE	✓	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Jamaica	no	✓	FRM	✓	✓	x	x	✓	✓	✓	x	x	x	x	x	✓	x
Trinidad & Tob.	no	✓	DIFF	✓	x	**	**	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	✓
<b>Europe</b>																	
Portugal	no	✓	FPM	✓	x	✓	✓	✓*	✓	x	**	✓	x	x	x	x	x

<sup>a</sup>Women who are still abstaining from intercourse after the last birth are excluded in addition to the usual exclusion of pregnant and not currently married women.

<sup>b</sup>Abbreviations are: FOTCAF = Factors Other Than Contraception Affecting Fertility (module); FRM = Fertility Regulation Module; FPM = Family Planning Module; CORE = core questionnaire; DIFF = None of the usual modules or core questionnaire was followed exactly.

✓ = Obtained data equivalent to recommended questions.

✓\* = Obtained additional data and the recommended information.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with recommended question.

x = Omitted question altogether.



you stop using that method?', with one possible answer being 'to become pregnant'. The FP module also asked a further question of all who had stopped, for both base groups, regardless of whether they wanted more, 'For how many months altogether have you used any method since your (last) child's birth?' Current users were also asked the duration of use in the open interval. Eight countries asked the full FP set of questions on open-interval use – Morocco, Nepal, Portugal, Colombia, Costa Rica, Paraguay, Venezuela and Egypt. A few others obtained some information on timing of use which was not the same as the module's:

- Bangladesh – base group (1): those who were not currently using were asked how long the last method and had been used continuously  
base group (2): including all non-currently married, infecund or sterilized were also asked the same question
- Malaysia – base group (1): all current users and those who used earlier in the open interval and had no pregnancies were asked how many months after the start of marriage or end of the last pregnancy use of *any method* was begun. Those who used earlier in the open interval and who had one or more pregnancies were asked how long *the last method* was in use before stopping, and how long ago use was stopped  
base group (2): including all not currently married, infecund or sterilized women who had used since the last pregnancy (or since marriage, if no pregnancies) were asked how many months after the beginning of the open interval use of any method begun, how long the method was in use before stopping, and how long ago use was stopped
- Philippines – current users were only asked when they started using the current method, while all past users were asked when they had started using the last method, and when use was stopped
- Trinidad & Tobago – base group (1): women with 1+ live births who were not currently using were asked the total duration of use of any method, since the last child's birth, but current users were asked only the duration of use of the current method  
base group (1), women with 0 live births: not asked any questions on duration of use  
base group (2): no questions on duration of use.

## 6.5 USE IN THE CLOSED INTERVAL

### Questions and base populations

This item was not obtained in the core questionnaire, but was included in the three modules, FOTCAF, fertility

regulation and family planning. Only five countries completely omitted questions on the subject – Mauritania, Thailand, Haiti, Trinidad & Tobago and Mexico. Since the closed interval (defined variously by pregnancies or births, as discussed below) refers to a period when the respondent was married, current marital status was not usually considered in determining the base population, except that single women were normally excluded. Exceptions occurred in Cameroon, where single women with children were included, in Pakistan, where women who were not currently married were excluded, and Turkey, where sterilized women were excluded.

The FOTCAF module defined the closed interval as the period between the last two pregnancies, which meant that women with only one pregnancy were not considered to have a closed interval. FOTCAF countries asked only whether contraception was used, and the method used (without specifying the last method). Countries which used the FOTCAF approach were Cameroon, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Lesotho, Senegal, Sudan, Tunisia, Syria and Yemen AR, Nigeria and Benin, which used some parts of the FOTCAF module, nevertheless used births to define the interval, although they also asked only if use occurred and the method used. In contrast Korea and Malaysia, which are best classified as FR countries, used pregnancies to define the interval, and Fiji, which falls into none of the types, also used pregnancies.

The FR and FP modules defined the closed interval for women with at least one birth, or a current pregnancy, allowing marriage to be the beginning of the interval. These two modules asked the basic questions about whether contraception was used in the interval and what was the *last method* used. Nineteen countries asked these questions as recommended in the modules. In addition, both modules asked those who had used contraception in the closed interval (the FR module alone excluding users of abstinence) and who either wanted more children, or wanted the last child, 'Did you become pregnant while using that method, or had you stopped using before becoming pregnant?' Those who had stopped using before were further asked, 'Did you stop because you wanted to become pregnant?', if the FR module was being used, or the open-ended question, 'Why did you stop using that method?', if the FP module was used. However, the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire suggested that the open-ended question be used in the FR module as well. Table 16, in the columns under 'closed interval use', shows which countries asked these FR and FP module questions, and use of the 1977 modification by FR module countries. Although the modules recommended selection on the basis of wanting more/wanting the last child four countries (Korea, Malaysia, Nepal and Philippines) did not apply the selection and asked all who had used in the interval both questions, while Bangladesh and Indonesia did so for the first question (whether pregnant while using . . .) but not for the second question (why did you stop). Four countries (Indonesia, Korea, Malaysia and Nepal) not only asked the FR question ('Did you stop because you wanted to become pregnant?') but further probed those who answered no: 'Why did you stop using that method?' Although most FR countries applied the exclusion of users of abstinence from these questions, a few did not – Korea, Malaysia and Dominican Republic. Two FP countries, Nepal and Philippines did

exclude users of abstinence, although the FP module does not recommend it.

### Duration of use

Only the family planning module included any questions on duration of use in the closed interval. All who used in the interval were asked, 'For how many months altogether did you use any method. . .?'. Seven countries asked this question as recommended: Morocco, Nepal, Colombia, Costa Rica, Paraguay, Venezuela and Egypt. In addition three others obtained some information on the timing of use. Bangladesh asked those who used in the first closed interval, 'For how long did you use this method continuously?', without specifying whether the last or any method was meant. Malaysia asked three questions, for use in each closed pregnancy interval:

– 'How many months after (marriage, first pregnancy, second pregnancy, etc) did you start using a method?'

For those who stopped using before they became pregnant:

– 'How many months had you been using the (last) method before you stopped?'; and

– 'How many months before you became pregnant the next time did you stop using the (last) method?'

Portugal asked, in regard to the last closed interval, the number of months that the last method had been used; also, women who had stopped using before becoming pregnant were asked how many months after stopping did they become pregnant.

Although questions are normally asked only about the last closed interval, a few countries asked about earlier closed intervals as well. Korea and Malaysia obtained use in each closed pregnancy interval in the past. Both asked the full set of questions on each interval: whether used in the interval, methods used; last method used; whether became pregnant while using or had stopped; whether stopped to become pregnant; if not, why stopped. Malaysia asked in addition, for each interval: why did not use, if no use in an interval; and for those who did use, questions on timing of use, as described above. Portugal also obtained use in each closed pregnancy interval and asked the usual full set of questions, except that only the last method, not *all* methods used in an interval, was recorded. Benin asked women with three or more children whether they had used in the birth interval before the last closed interval and the method used.

Fiji and Sri Lanka asked a few questions on timing of use, but not in relation to any particular interval: women who had ever used the pill, IUD or condom were asked separately for each method, the year they had started using the method, and how long it was used. Fiji added a third question for those who had stopped using the method – whether they ever started using it again.

## 6.6 FIRST USE OF CONTRACEPTION

The family planning module recommended that two items be obtained – the method first used and the number of living children the respondent had when she first started using that method. Seventeen countries asked both of these questions (see table 16).

In the cases of Korea and Malaysia, where these questions

were not directly asked, but were obtained from the fertility planning chart or the contraceptive use history respectively, one can find out the following:

– The method(s) used in the first birth interval where use occurred, and the last method used in that interval, if there were more than one. If there were one or two methods, we could obtain the first method used, but not if three or more methods were used.

– From the number of pregnancies the woman had at the time of first use, available from the history of contraceptive use, in combination with the maternity history section, the number of living children at the time of first use can be obtained.

Turkey changed the second question to , 'After how many live births did you use that method?', but used jointly with the birth history the number of living children can be obtained. Panama and Philippines first checked which women had used more than one method, and asked only this group what was the first method. In addition to the recommended questions, Philippines also asked when use was begun.

## 6.7 INTENTION TO USE IN THE FUTURE

This topic was included in all modules and in the core questionnaire. Currently married, fecund never-users were asked, 'Do you think you and your husband may use any method at any time in the future so that you may not become pregnant?' The family planning module took a slightly different approach, first asking whether the respondent approved of the use of contraception, then whether her husband approved, and only if both approved was the question on intention to use in the future asked. One interpretation is that couples where one or both disapproved are unlikely to use in the future; however, this information is not directly comparable with countries which used the core, or the FOTCAF or FR modules where only the respondent's opinion was obtained.

Two countries (Cameroon and Portugal) omitted the question completely, while the majority (30 countries) asked the core question, ie without determining approval. Among this group a few countries obtained additional information. Benin asked everyone who knew at least one method this question, including the infecund and not currently married as well, and covering current, ever-users and never-users; those who intended use were asked which method would be used. Tunisia asked the question to all currently married never-users, regardless of fecundity, and also asked what method would be used, and when use was intended. Nigeria referred only to women, 'Do you think you will use. . .', not 'you and your husband', and included never-married women who had had sexual relations, in the base population. Fiji addressed the question to all women who were not currently using, not only never-users, and also asked those who intended to use in the future the method they would use. Those who did not intend using were asked, 'Is the main reason you will not use a method because you yourself disapprove or your husband disapproves or both of you dsapprove?' Malaysia and Korea also asked all currently married fecund women who were

not currently using their intention to use in future. Malaysia further obtained the method or methods preferred for those who intended use, and asked those who did not intend using in the future, 'Why is that?'. Pakistan probed those who did not intend to use in the future with an open-ended question on the reason. Haiti asked women who knew the pill, IUD, condom and other female scientific methods but had never used them, whether they would be willing to use the method if they knew where to find it. Similarly, for female sterilization women were asked whether they would be willing to have this operation. Sri Lanka asked never-users why they had never used, with

codes as follows: never heard of methods, disapprove of family planning; recently married; want more children, husband against use, do not know how or where to obtain supplies/services, believe cannot conceive, others. Multiple answers were allowed for this question.

As shown in table 16, eight countries used the family planning module approach, obtaining approval of use first. Among this group, Egypt probed respondents who either did not intend to use in the future, or who disapproved (or their husband disapproved) of using contraception, with an open-ended question on the reason for not agreeing to use.

## 7 Preferences for Children

The core questionnaire included questions on a few aspects of this topic — the capacity and desire for more children, including the number of additional children desired and the preferred sex of the next child, and the total number of children desired by the respondent. The family planning and fertility regulation modules expand this set of questions to include one on whether the last child was wanted. Several countries added a question on how soon the next child was wanted, as discussed below. A few countries added more questions that were relevant to their particular cultural and social conditions. Table 17 shows use of these questions by countries.

### 7.1 FECUNDITY STATUS

Currently married women who were not sterilized, not pregnant and not currently using contraception were asked the question, 'As far as you know, is it physically possible for you and your husband to have a child supposing you wanted one?' In the FOTCAF module only, however, current users were not excluded from this question: 11 countries used the FOTCAF base population — Benin, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Lesotho, Mauritania, Senegal, Sudan, Tunisia, Syria and Yemen AR. Fiji, Korea and Malaysia, although not FOTCAF countries, also used this base population which included current users. Fiji in addition asked a more detailed question, 'Some couples are unable to have any (more) children, because the wife has reached the menopause, or because one of them has been sterilized, or because of some other physical or medical problem. Are you and your husband able to have another child?'

A few countries referred only to the respondent, in the question, not to 'you and your husband': Nigeria, Colombia, Mexico, Paraguay and Venezuela did so. Benin used the word 'vous' only, but did not specify 'and your husband', although 'vous' could be interpreted as plural. It is doubtful whether this slight change would have any significant effect on comparability, however, since it is likely that it is the woman's fecundity that is usually considered.

More important changes were made by Pakistan and Cameroon. Pakistan asked the question only to never-users among the currently married, not pregnant base population, excluding past users, who are normally asked the question. Pakistan also probed those who said that they were infecund about the reasons why. Cameroon changed the base population, including all non-pregnant women who had ever had sexual relations who were also:

- aged 25 or over, and had one or no live births; or
- aged 30 or over, and had only two live births; or
- all women with three or more live births, regardless of age; or

- women under age 25 with one or no live births who either do not want any more children or don't know if they want any (more); or
- women under age 30 with two live births who either do not want any more children or don't know if they want more.

Those who answered that they could not have (more) children were asked, 'Why not?' In addition, women aged under 25 with one live birth, and those under 30 with two children were asked, 'Can you say why you have so few children?'

In Senegal and Ivory Coast, where sterilization was never mentioned as a method, no exclusion of sterilized couples was provided for. Mauritania, also, did not specifically question the use of sterilization, but it could have been voluntarily mentioned as a method used, and provision is made to skip out such women from the question on fecundity. In addition, however, Mauritania further probed those who said they were infecund about the reason, coding answers as: sickness, menopause, sterile, female sterilization, male sterilization and other.

### 7.2 WHETHER WANTED ADDITIONAL CHILDREN

#### Basic questions and base population

In all the modules and the core questionnaire, currently married, fecund, non-sterilized women were asked if they wanted any more children (women who already had one or more), if they wanted any (childless women), and whether they wanted any more in addition to the one expected (pregnant women).

Those who did want more (or any) children were then asked whether a boy or girl was preferred for the next child, and either how many more children were wanted, or how many in all, for childless women. Subsequently in the 1977 modifications to the core questionnaire, it was recommended that childless women not be asked how many children in all they wanted, since the question on total number of children desired would obtain approximately the same information.

Two countries, Senegal and Ivory Coast, slightly modified their base population: since no questions were directly asked on sterilization, there was no provision for excluding the sterilized, although a few may have volunteered this as the method used. Benin widened the base, asking all fecund women the question, not only currently married fecund women. Cameroon asked only some specific groups, omitting all others:

- all currently pregnant women
- women under age 25 who had never been pregnant

**Table 17** Use of questions on preferences for children

Country	Fecundity status	Preferences in open interval			Inclusion of single infecund, sterilized	Desire for spacing births	Desire for last birth	Total number of children desired	
		If want more children	Prefer boy or girl	How many more				Ever-married	Never-married
<b>Africa</b>									
Benin	√*	√*	√	√*	no	√	×	√	**
Cameroon	**	**	**	**	no	×	×	**	**
Ghana	√*	√	√	√*	no	√	×	√	√
Ivory Coast	√*	√*	√	√*	no	√	×	√*	√
Kenya	√*	√	√	√*	no	×	×	√	√
Lesotho	√*	√	√	√*	no	×	×	√	NA
Nigeria	√*	√	√	√*	no	√	×	√	√
Senegal	√*	√*	√	√*	no	×	×	√	√
Egypt	√	√	√	√*	yes	√	√	√*	NA
Mauritania	√*	√	√	√*	no	√	×	√	NA
Morocco	√	√	√	√*	yes	√	√	√	×
Sudan N	√*	√	√	√*	no	√	×	√	NA
Tunisia	√*	√	√	√*	no	×	×	√	NA
<b>Asia and Pacific</b>									
Jordan	√	√	√	√*	yes	×	√	√	NA
Syria	√*	√	√	√	no	×	×	√	NA
Turkey	√	√	√	√	no	√	√*	√	NA
Yemen AR	√*	√	√	√*	no	√	×	√	NA
Bangladesh	√	**	√	√	yes	**	√	√	NA
Nepal	√	√	√	√	yes	×	×	√	NA
Pakistan	**	√	√	√	no	×	×	**	NA
Sri Lanka	√	√	√	√	yes	×	×	√	NA
Fiji	√*	√	√	**	no	√	√*	**	NA
Indonesia	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	NA
Korea, Rep. of	√*	√	√	√	yes	√	√	√*	NA
Malaysia	√*	√	√	√	yes	√	×	√*	NA
Philippines	√	√	√	√*	yes	×	√	√	NA
Thailand	√	√	√	√*	no	×	×	√	NA
<b>Americas</b>									
Colombia	√*	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	√
Ecuador	√	√	√	√*	yes	√	√	√	√
Paraguay	√*	√	√	√*	yes	√	√	√	√
Peru	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	NA
Venezuela	√*	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	√
Costa Rica	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	×
Dominican Rep.	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	√
Mexico	√*	√	√	√	no	×	×	√	√
Panama	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	×
Guyana	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	×
Haiti	√	√	√	√	no	×	×	√	√
Jamaica	√	√	√	√	yes	×	√	√	×
Trinidad & Tob.	√	√	√	√*	no	×	×	√	×
<b>Europe</b>									
Portugal	√	√	√	**	yes	√	√*	√*	NA

√ = Obtained data equivalent to module question.

√\* = Obtained additional data and recommended question.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with core.

× = Omitted question altogether.

NA = Not applicable, because ever-married sample.

- women under 25 with one live birth only or under 30 with two live births only.

Significant changes in the basic questions occurred in Bangladesh, Fiji and Portugal. Bangladesh asked women with one or more children who were not currently pregnant, the question, 'Do you want to have another child soon?', where the word 'soon' replaced 'sometime' which implies a longer period of time than 'soon'. Other groups (childless or pregnant women) were asked the usual questions, however. Portugal did not ask non-pregnant women who wanted more children how many more children were wanted; instead the only question asked was how many children in all they wanted. Fiji made the same change as Portugal, but did so for the whole base population, including pregnant women.

The suggested 1977 modification, that the total number desired be also used as the additional number for childless women, instead of a further question to those childless women who want some children on the number wanted, was used by several countries, including most that used the FOTCAF module: Benin, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Lesotho, Mauritania, Morocco, Nigeria, Senegal, Sudan, Tunisia, Philippines, Thailand, Trinidad & Tobago, Colombia, Ecuador, Mexico, Paraguay, Peru, Egypt, Syria and Yemen AR.

In addition to the core set of questions discussed so far, the fertility regulation and family planning modules also asked women who were not currently married, and those who were married but sterilized or infecund, whether they had wanted to have any more children after their last birth (or any children since their first marriage, for childless women). Table 17 shows that 21 countries asked this group the recommended question on preferences in the open interval.

#### Added questions on the topic of wanting more children

##### *Spacing of births*

Sixteen countries asked a question on *spacing*, ie how soon the next birth was wanted, for women who wanted additional children. The question typically asked was, 'Do you want the next child as soon as possible or do you prefer to wait for a few years?', coding 'soon' and 'in a few years' separately, in addition to a code for don't know. The phrase 'as soon as possible' varied among countries: 'more or less soon' (Ecuador), 'quickly' (Paraguay), 'in the next year or so' (Ghana, Nigeria and Yemen AR), 'in the near future' (Egypt), 'soon, say in a year' (Benin). The phrase 'for a few years' was also varied, eg 'wait for a while' (Paraguay), 'after some delay' (Korea and Malaysia), 'until later' (Benin), 'for several years' (Ghana, Nigeria), or 'in the future' (Sudan and Yemen AR splitting the question into two parts). Fiji split the question into two parts, asking mothers who wanted to wait how old they would like the youngest child to be when they had the next child. Turkey took a different approach and first asked whether the next child was wanted now or in a few years, then asked those who answered no whether a child was wanted at any time in the future. Portugal simply asked in what year the next child would be preferred. Malaysia and Korea further probed those who answered

'after some delay' about the year preferred (Malaysia) or in how many years the birth would be wanted (Korea). Paraguay included a code for 'indifferent' in addition to the usual two codes, 'soon' and 'prefer to wait'.

Apart from these small variations in the format of questions the base population also differed among countries. All women who were currently married, fecund and wanted more children could be asked the question, and a few countries did question the whole of this group – Ghana, Egypt, Ecuador, Paraguay, Korea and Malaysia did so. A few countries excluded pregnant women, but asked all others in this base population – Fiji, Turkey, Nigeria, Portugal, Ivory Coast and Mauritania. The base population was further restricted to women with one or more children, who were not pregnant by Benin, Sudan and Yemen AR. Morocco asked the usual questions only to a subgroup of the population: zero live birth women who had never used contraception and who were not currently pregnant.

A few countries also probed currently married fecund women who said they did not want more children, to see how fixed this attitude was. The question usually asked was whether no more children at all were wanted, or simply none for the moment. Benin and Mauritania asked all non-pregnant women in the base population, while Nigeria asked all who had either one or more births or who were currently pregnant. Ivory Coast asked all women in the base population who wanted no more children, and Morocco asked those who wanted no more children, within the same restricted subgroup described above.

##### *Husband's preferences for children.*

A few countries asked about the *husband's preference* for more children. Fiji asked all currently married fecund women, 'Do you think your husband wants you to have another child sometime in the future?' and if the answer was yes, a further question, 'How many children in all do you think he really wants?' Egypt asked all currently married, fecund women a set of questions on husband's preferences:

- Do you think your husband would like to have another child in the future?
- If your husband could choose exactly the number of children to have in his whole life, how many children would that be, in your opinion? (allowing a dk answer)
- Did you discuss with your husband the number of children you would like to have?
- Who decides upon the number of children you would like to have, you, your husband or both of you?

Korea asked all currently married fecund women, 'Does your husband want you to have any (more) children?' If the answer is yes, the number of children and preference for a boy or girl as the next child, are also asked. Malaysia asked all currently married women the same questions except that sex preference was omitted. Korea and Portugal, in a set of questions about preferences at the time of first marriage, asked, 'When you first married, did you ever talk to your husband about the number of children he wanted?', and if the answer was yes, then the number wanted was also obtained. Nigeria asked currently married fecund women whether their husband wanted them to have more children. In addition, if the husband's mother was still

alive (a question being asked to determine this) women were also asked whether their mother-in-law wanted them to have more children.

#### *Other added questions*

In addition to these two topics, spacing and husband's preferences, a few countries added various questions relevant to their own interests. Jordan asked those who wanted (more) how many boys and girls were desired. Both Fiji and Portugal asked women whether they had given any thought to whether they wanted (more) children, but did not use the answer to exclude respondents from further questions. Malaysia probed women who did not want any more children about their reasons for this preference. The Dominican Republic asked all women questions bearing on women's attitude towards having no more children – whether it was good or bad for women with many children to have an operation to stop, and if the answer was 'good', they were further asked after how many children would stopping be desirable, or if 'bad' then their reasons for this opinion. Turkey asked similar questions, but only to women who had not already mentioned sterilization: whether it is all right for a woman to have the operation if the couple want no more children; whether she herself would consider having a sterilization operation, if she were in the same situation; and for those who knew of vasectomy whether it is all right for a man to have a vasectomy, if the couple wanted no more children.

Portugal added extensive questioning on preferences. Women who already have two or more children (including the current pregnancy) and who also said they wanted more children were asked why they wished to do so, the reasons given as: wants boy; wants girl; likes children; children are an economic advantage; it is good for children to have siblings; gift of God; country needs more people; other reasons. They were then asked which reason was the most important. All women who did not want more children were asked why, the reasons given as: health problems; too old to have children; wish to work; economic problems; unsuitable housing; too much housework; lack of child-care facilities; wants to get professional training; population is growing too fast; other reasons. They were also then asked which was the most important reason. This group was further asked if there were any circumstances which might change their mind, and if so, what were the reasons. Answers were coded as: no need to work, part-time work better salary for husband; better salary for wife; better family allowance; better housing situation; provision of child care facilities; other reasons. Finally they were asked which was the most important reason. In Portugal, also, all ever-married women were asked whether, when they were first married, did they have any idea about the number of children they would like to have, and if so, how many. Those who did know how many they wanted were also asked whether, when first married, the first child was wanted: as soon as possible; after some time; didn't matter; other answers. Two codes from previous answers – 'didn't know how many wanted', 'did not want any children', were also used. Those who answered 'after some time' were further asked how long they wanted to wait.

Korea also asked some questions on spacing desired when the respondent was first married:

- 'When first married, did you know how many children you wanted?'
- If yes: 'How many?'
- Did you want the first as soon as possible, or after some delay or didn't care?'
- If delay: 'How long?'
- 'Did relatives want you to have a child as soon as possible?'

### 7.3 WANTING THE LAST BIRTH

Only the fertility regulation and family planning modules include questions on this aspect of preferences for children. Both modules asked all women who wanted no more children<sup>11</sup> and who had one or more live births or who were currently pregnant, 'Thinking back to the time before you became pregnant with your last child, had you wanted to have any more children?' The wording of the question was changed to suit the situation of currently pregnant women, to 'before you became pregnant this time'. Women who do want more children were assumed therefore to have wanted the last child also, and for this reason were not asked the question. Twenty-one countries asked questions on this subject, with the majority exactly following the recommended base population and question format (see table 17).

Only Fiji, Turkey and Portugal varied from the recommended standards. Turkey widened the base population by asking all of the not married, infecund, sterilized group this question, whereas normally only those who want no more in the open interval are asked. Fiji asked all women with one or more pregnancies the question on their desire for the last pregnancy, regardless of their preferences for the future, or in the open interval. Also, it is the last pregnancy that is the subject of the question not the last live birth or current pregnancy. More information was also obtained: women were first asked whether they had given any thought to whether they wanted another baby, in the context of the last closed pregnancy interval. Whether the answer was yes or no, a further question was then asked: 'Did you want to become pregnant at that particular time?', allowing answers of yes, no and didn't mind/never thought. Those who answered no were further probed: 'Did you want a child later, or did you really want no more children at any time in the future?' The information which the standard question obtains can be extracted from the results of these two questions.

Portugal also changed the base population and the format of the question. This question was incorporated into a full history of contraceptive use for each pregnancy interval, and desire for each pregnancy, not only the last pregnancy, was asked. Two assumptions were introduced:

- Women who said they had stopped using in the interval in order to become pregnant were not asked about whether they wanted that pregnancy because the implication of their reason for stopping is that they did want the pregnancy.

<sup>11</sup> In regard to the currently married, fecund women, this referred to their attitude at the time of the survey, but for those not currently married, infecund or sterilized, it referred to their attitude in the open interval, after the birth of the last child.

- Women who became pregnant while using were also not asked whether they wanted the pregnancy because the implication is that they were using in order to avoid becoming pregnant, and therefore did not want the pregnancy.

All other women, regardless of their preferences for children in the future, or in the open interval, were asked whether they wanted that pregnancy. As in the case of Fiji, two questions were asked, from which the recommended information can be obtained:

- ‘Recalling the period before this pregnancy, had you wanted to become pregnant at that time?’  
If no then:
- ‘Did you want no more children at all, or did you want a child at some later time?’

#### 7.4 TOTAL NUMBER OF CHILDREN DESIRED

##### Ever-married women

One question was recommended on the number of children desired: ‘If you could choose exactly the number of children to have in your whole life, how many children would that be?’ As table 17 shows for ever-married women, all countries excepting only three either asked the question exactly as recommended, or in a few cases, obtained some additional information as well.

The three exceptions were Cameroon, Fiji and Pakistan. Cameroon used the question as recommended, but only asked a selected group of its all-women sample: those who had had sexual relations, and who were not currently pregnant, considered themselves fecund and either had three or more children, or were aged 25 or more, but had only one child, or were aged 30 or more but had only two children. Fiji omitted this question altogether, but did ask currently married, fecund women who wanted another child, ‘How many children in all do you really want?’ Pakistan changed the question to mean ‘ideal’ rather than ‘desired’ family size: ‘In your opinion how many children should a married couple have?’ Although Malaysia changed the wording slightly, the meaning remains approximately the same as the standard: ‘If you were just married and could have just the number of children you want how many children would you want to have by the time you were 50?’

Ivory Coast added a question, asking currently married women whether they had ever discussed this question with their husband or partner. Egypt also asked how many male children were desired, and for currently married women

only, asked the respondent’s opinion of her husband’s desired total number of children, whether she had discussed this subject with her husband, and who decided on the number of children the couple wanted, herself, her husband or both of them.

Portugal probed women about the desired number of children – if they could not have exactly the number given, would they prefer one more or one less? Also, two questions were added on the ideal family size for a Portuguese family, in general, and the ideal family size for a family like the respondent’s.

Malaysia asked a series of questions about *preferred family size and sex ratio*. All eligible respondents were asked their preferred family size, and if the number was one or more, they were then asked how many boys and girls they preferred. If the desired family size was three or less the respondent was asked, ‘Some people feel that *three* children or less is a small family. Why would you like to have only (no) children?’ If the desired size was five or more, she is asked, ‘Some people feel that five or more is a large family. Why would . . . ?’

Korea added a whole section on *family size values*, asking sex and size preferences under hypothetical conditions, essentially trying to find out whether the tendency is towards a lower or higher family size, if the desired one is not possible, and whether fewer or more boys were preferred if the desired is not possible. Korea also included the following questions in this section:

- ‘When first married did you know how many children you wanted?’
- If yes: ‘How many?’
- ‘How many daughters did your mother have; your husband’s mother?’
- ‘Was your (first) husband the eldest son or not?’

##### Never-married women

As shown in table 17, this topic is not relevant for 21 countries, which interviewed ever-married women only. Of the 20 countries which interviewed never-married women, 12 asked all of them the total desired family size, two asked the question to a restricted group (Benin and Cameroon) and six did not ask any never-married women this question (see table 17 for countries). Benin omitted those who had not yet started menstruation – presumably a tiny group in their sample of 15–49 year olds. Cameroon interviewed those never-married women who had had sexual relations, within the base population covered which was itself restricted to certain parity and age groups, as described above for ever-married women.



## 8 Family Planning Module

Going beyond the core questions on knowledge and use of contraception, this module recommends a limited set of questions on the perceived accessibility of family planning sources. The topics covered are the physical accessibility of family planning sources, for each of four methods (pill, IUD, condom and sterilization), and their cost; knowledge and use of family planning sources; and questions on possession of methods at home at the time of interview. As table 18 shows, less than half of the 41 WFS countries asked a substantial proportion of the module questions, although as many as 31 asked one or more questions on this subject. Countries which asked no questions on family planning other than the core questions on knowledge and use of specific methods were: Cameroon, Senegal, Mauritania, Bangladesh, Thailand, Guyana, Jamaica, Ecuador, Syria and Yemen AR.

In the section on 'Knowledge and Use of Contraception', we observed that the position of questions on family planning sources, relative to those on knowledge and use, may affect answers to the latter set of questions. The reverse may also be true: when the questions on sources follow those on methods, the respondent would be quite clear on the kinds of sources intended, after having gone through the list of contraceptive methods. The few countries which asked questions on sources first (Trinidad & Tobago, Colombia, Costa Rica, Mexico, Panama and Venezuela) may well have obtained a lower proportion of positive answers than they otherwise would have done, compared to all other countries, where the recommended structure, of placing source questions last, was followed.

### 8.1 POSSESSION OF CONTRACEPTIVES

Women who had ever used the pill, other female scientific methods (diaphragm, jelly, foam tablets, etc) or condoms were asked, 'Are there any (method) in the home now?' Only 11 countries asked these questions, in most cases to the expected base population, but Egypt and Indonesia asked only currently married ever-users. Nepal and Jordan did not ask the question in relation to other female scientific methods, while Tunisia added a question to those who had the product at home, 'Where did you get the method from?', and also asked ever-users of the IUD, injection, male and female sterilization, the place where the product or operation had been obtained. The codes for places used by Tunisia were: family planning centre or hospital, pharmacy, private doctor or other sources.

Fiji did not ask the usual questions, but asked current users of the pill and condom how many packets of pills/condoms were bought the last time.

### 8.2 METHOD SPECIFIC SOURCE QUESTIONS

For each of four methods (pill, IUD, condom and steri-

lization) it was recommended that those who knew the method be asked where they would go to get the method, how long it would take to get there, the means of transport, and the expected price of the contraceptive (operation) at that place. These questions were directed at getting information on the place that the respondent would go to, which may not necessarily be the closest known place. Seven countries asked some or all of these questions as recommended, to all who knew the method (see table 18). An eighth country, Venezuela, asked the full set of questions to women who used the method, but the questions referred to the nearest place, not the place the respondent would go to.

Sudan added injections to the usual list of methods, but as for the other methods, omitted form of transport, but obtained the place, time and cost. Ghana added injections and female scientific methods to the recommended list of four methods, and asked the full set of questions for these two also. Ghana also asked, separately for each of the six methods, 'From what type of places in Ghana can people get (name of method)?', probing for other places, and coding answers as follows: government hospital clinic; PPAG/Christian Council clinic; private doctor or private clinic; pharmacy or shop; family planning fieldworker; mobile family planning clinic; and no place known. If no place was known for a particular method, none of the further questions were asked on that method. This general question was asked in addition to the usual question on where the respondent would go.

### 8.3 NEAREST FAMILY PLANNING SOURCE

Instead of asking the recommended questions about the place the respondent would go to (or, in the case of Venezuela and Turkey, in addition to this), some countries asked about the nearest known source of contraceptive supplies, without reference to any specific methods. The questions were on distance to the source, time taken to travel to the source, and the type of transport, but most of the 12 countries which asked about the nearest source used only two of these questions (see table 18). Countries shown as having asked the question as 'recommended' used a similar base population as for the method-specific questions, ie all who had heard of any method or any source: Kenya, Nepal, Colombia, Costa Rica, Mexico, Venezuela and Turkey. The other five countries differed as follows:

- Lesotho: — used the recommended base population, but questions asked were in relation to the last place visited
- Indonesia — asked only those who went in the last 12 months, about the last place visited. Added questions on cost of transport, if public transport used, time spent waiting at the source and if any money paid for the contraceptive product/service, how much

Table 18 Use of questions on sources of family planning advice and supplies<sup>a</sup>

Country	Possession at home			Method-specific source questions																Nearest source			Knowledge of source		Visits to sources					Thought about visiting?	Details of last method	Problems with supplies	Sources of family planning knowledge								
	Condom			Pill				IUD				Condom				Sterilization				Distance	Time	Transp.	Yes/No	List of sources	Ever visit?	Last 12 months															
	Pill	OFS	Condom	Place	Time	Transp.	Cost	Place	Time	Transp.	Cost	Place	Time	Transp.	Cost	Place	Time	Transp.	Cost							Any visit?	Last place	Satisfied?	Will visit again?												
Africa																																									
Benin	-	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	-				
Ghana	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
Ivory Coast	-	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-				
Kenya	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-				
Lesotho	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-				
Nigeria	-	-	-	**	-	-	-	**	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-				
Egypt	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓			
Morocco	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Sudan N	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Tunisia	✓*	✓*	✓*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Asia and Pacific																																									
Jordan	✓	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Turkey	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Nepal	✓	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Pakistan	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Sri Lanka	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Fiji	**	-	**	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Indonesia	**	**	**	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Korea, Rep. of	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Malaysia	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Philippines	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Americas																																									
Colombia	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Paraguay	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Peru	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Venezuela	✓	✓	✓	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Costa Rica	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Dominican Rep.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Mexico	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Panama	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Haiti	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Trinidad & Tob.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Europe																																									
Portugal	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

<sup>a</sup>Only countries which asked some questions are shown on this table, and dashes (-) are used to indicate non-use of a question, instead of the usual symbol (x) because this makes it easier to identify those countries which did use the particular questions.

✓ = Obtained data equivalent to recommended questions.

✓\* = Obtained additional data and the recommended information.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with recommended question.

x\* = Did not ask core question, but obtained equivalent information from other questions.

- = Omitted topic altogether.

- Korea — asked the usual base population, but phrased the question in a more general or hypothetical sense, about where a woman around here, where the respondent lived, could go, rather than referring either to the woman herself, or to the nearest place
- Malaysia — asks all women who know of a place questions about the place they would prefer to go to, or if there is no preference, about the closest place. In addition to questions on time taken to get to the source and type of transport used, women were also asked about the cost of transport (for all means except bicycle and on foot), and whether child-care arrangements had to be made, and if so, whether it was paid for or free of charge
- Philippines — all women who reported knowing sources of family planning supplies were asked which of the known places was closest, and whether it was within the barangay, outside it but within the city or municipality, or outside the city or municipality.

#### 8.4 KNOWLEDGE OF ANY SOURCE

Apart from questions on sources for four selected supply methods, pill, IUD, condom and sterilization, the family planning module recommended that those who knew none of these four supply methods, which would include women who knew no method at all, should be asked, 'Do you know where you can go to get family planning advice or supplies?', expecting an answer of yes or no. Although only a few countries asked the question exactly as recommended, as many as 19 countries obtained information on whether any source was known, and 13 of these obtained, in addition, a list of the sources known.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>12</sup>Countries which obtained a list of sources used the following codes (FP = Family Planning):

- Kenya — mobile FP clinic, hospital or dispensary; visiting FP fieldworker; pharmacy or shop; private doctor
- Lesotho — FP clinic; mobile FP clinic; hospital; visiting FP fieldworker; pharmacy, doctor; other
- Indonesia — FP clinic; hospital; FP fieldworker; pharmacy; family doctor; PPKB; village headman
- Nepal — FP clinic; hospital; FP worker; pharmacy; other
- Pakistan — hospital or dispensary; FP clinic; shop; other
- Malaysia — Open-ended — up to five sources recorded
- Philippines — Separately for advice and supplies: FP clinic; hospital without FPC; FP fieldworker; commercial service; barrio supply point; private doctor; other
- Trinidad & Tobago — FP association clinic; Government health centre of FP clinic or hospital; FP fieldworker; pharmacy or drugstore; private doctor; other sources
- Colombia — FP centre (Pro Familia); health centre; hospital; FP worker; pharmacy; doctor; other
- Costa Rica — CCSS; Ministry of Health centre; private clinic; private doctor; pharmacy; other
- Mexico — clinic of FEPAC; clinic or hospital of SSA; clinic or hospital of IMSS; other medical institutions financed by State; pharmacy; private doctor; clinic; hospital; no reply
- Venezuela — hospital (MSAS); Beneficencia; health centres (MSAS); institutions of social security; private or special clinics; private consultant; pharmacy; other sources
- Turkey — maternity hospital or clinic; general hospital; maternal and child health centre; pharmacy; private doctor (in his rooms); midwife or nurse (except traditional midwife); other (specify).

Among the eight countries which had followed the module in asking method-specific questions, only Morocco exactly met the recommended format for this question. Ghana and Sudan omitted this question, while Egypt limited the base population only to those who did not know a source for the supply methods on which specific questions were asked (pill, IUD) and all who knew at least one other method. Venezuela also changed the base population from that recommended: this general question was asked to all women who had heard of family planning and it preceded the method-specific questions. Turkey asked all currently married women this question, and those who did know a place were then specifically probed about whether they had ever heard of each of several sources. Paraguay and Philippines, also countries which asked method-specific source questions, modified the base for this question. Paraguay not only asked all women who did not know any of the four supply methods, but also asked women who knew one or more supply methods but did not know any source for any of them. Philippines asked all women this question and, moreover, asked two separate questions, one on sources for family planning advice and another on sources for supplies, obtaining lists of places known for each.

Apart from users of the method-specific questions, 13 other countries asked a similar general question on knowledge of any source, although no method-specific questions had been asked. The base population varied among countries:

- (1) Kenya, Lesotho and Nepal: All women who had heard of at least one method of family planning were asked this question, and those who knew a place were then asked where they could go.
- (2) Indonesia: All currently married women were asked this question, and a list of sources was obtained.
- (3) Korea and Malaysia: All women were asked the general question, but only Malaysia obtained the actual places known.
- (4) Pakistan: Only currently married never-users were asked the general question, and a list of places known was recorded.
- (5) Colombia, Costa Rica, Mexico, Panama and Trinidad & Tobago: As in the case of Venezuela all women who had heard of family planning were asked if they knew where they could go for supplies/advice, and a list of sources was obtained.
- (6) Although Portugal did not specifically ask this question, essentially the same information is obtained from the question, asked to all women in the sample, on whether they had ever been to a source, followed by a probe for women who had never been to a source, 'Where would you go for advice on family planning?'

#### 8.5 VISITS TO SOURCES

After ascertaining knowledge of sources of family planning advice or supplies, the module proceeds to a set of questions on actual visits to family planning sources. Everyone who knew one or more sources was asked if they had ever visited a source for either family planning advice or supplies. Those who had visited a source were then asked whether they went in the last 12 months, and if so, which source was last visited. This group was also asked whether they would visit that source again when advice or supplies were needed and if not, why not. Women whose last source was a public

one, eg a family planning clinic, or a fieldworker or a hospital, were asked whether they were satisfied with the attention received, at the last visit. Women who knew of at least one source, but who had not visited any source in the past 12 months were asked whether they had seriously considered getting family planning advice or supplies, and if they had, then why had they decided not to go. About 13 countries asked most if not all of these questions, as recommended, while nine others asked a small number of questions only, or asked similar questions, but not exactly as recommended (see table 18).

#### Ever been to source

Eighteen countries asked this question in some form, all asking the question to women who knew a source, except Portugal, where all women were asked this question, since the question on knowledge of sources was omitted. In the case of Ghana, although women who know a source form the base population it is more restricted than usual, because the general question on knowledge of sources was omitted, and only women who knew one or more of six supply methods (pill, IUD, condom, sterilization, injection and other female scientific methods) were asked about knowledge of sources.

Ghana and Kenya asked this question only in regard to going for family planning *supplies*, not advice and supplies, which would reduce the number who had visited, relative to other countries. Turkey did not ask the question in its general form, but specifically asked about attendance at each of several sources separately (sources listed in footnote 12 in the above section on 'Knowledge of Any Source').

#### Whether visited in last 12 months?

Seventeen countries asked this question on whether a source was visited, for either advice or supplies, in the last 12 months, in most cases exactly as recommended. However, Korea obtained additional information, the number of times that a source was visited in the last 12 months. Turkey asked questions on specific sources, rather than a general question, while Egypt broadened the question to include visits by another person, on behalf of the respondents. Ghana and Kenya phrased the question to include only visits for supplies, not both advice and supplies, and Kenya asked only women who knew more than one source, assuming that if only one was known, it would also have been the last visited. Although Tunisia asked a question on visits in the last 12 months, it was in regard to visits to family planning centres only, not any other sources.

#### Last place visited in preceding 12 months

After ascertaining if a source had been visited in the past 12 months, whether for advice or supplies, the module then followed with a question on the type of place visited last, within the past 12 months, regardless of whether the visit was to obtain advice or supplies. This question was asked as recommended by ten countries including Egypt, which, as in the previous question, allowed for visits by other persons on behalf of the respondent.

In the case of a few other countries, minor changes were made, making the results non-comparable with the module:

- Lesotho – The last place ever attended was obtained, but not the last place in the last 12 months.
- Indonesia – Only currently married women were asked this question. The last place, as well as other places visited during the last 12 months were recorded. Indonesia also added a number of questions on the last place visited in the last 12 months – the distance from her house to the last place; the usual means of transport, if it was public transport, the cost of travelling; the time taken for the two-way journey; the time spent waiting at the source; whether she paid for the services and contraceptive supplies, other than the first registration fee, and if so, how much.
- Malaysia – A list of *all* places or persons visited for advice or supplies in the past 12 months, was obtained, with up to five places being coded.
- Portugal – Women were simply asked where they had gone in the last 12 months, not specifying where they went the last time.

Several other countries asked about sources visited for supplies, only, not for both advice and supplies. Two countries, Ghana and Kenya, used the module question as recommended, except that they referred to visits for supplies only. In some other cases only ever-users or current users were asked about their type of source of supply:

- Fiji – Current users of the pill and condom were asked where the last supply had been bought, and for condom-users only, if the source was a health centre, whether all their supplies were bought from it, and if so, which health centre it was.
- Malaysia – Current users of the pill and condom were asked their usual source of supply, as well as whether this place was in the locality in which the woman lived.
- Haiti – All ever-users of the pill, IUD, condom, female sterilization and other female scientific methods were asked where they obtained the method.
- Panama – Panama asked ever-users of mechanical and chemical methods their source of supply: those who had used only one method are asked where obtained, while those who had used more than one method are asked where supplies for the first and last methods were obtained.
- Pakistan and Korea – These countries used a different concept – they asked *all ever-users* of supply methods for the *usual* place of *supply*. In the case of Pakistan the methods were the pill, condom, and Emko/durafoam, and in Korea, the pill and condom.

Finally, some information was obtained by nine countries

– the ones listed in table 18 under the column ‘Details of last method’ – on the type of source from which supplies are normally obtained: the question was usually asked in regard to the last method ever-used, if it is a ‘supply method’ such as the pill, condom and other female scientific methods. However, some countries asked about more methods or asked only current users, as discussed below under section 8.9, ‘Details of Last Method Used’.

In addition to the recommended question on the type of source last visited in the past 12 months, several countries also included a preceding question on all places visited in the last 12 months (Indonesia, Nepal, Trinidad and Tobago, Colombia, Costa Rica, Mexico and Venezuela). The codes used for sources, either the type last visited or all types visited, are the same as those mentioned in footnote 12 except for some countries which either did not obtain a list of places earlier, or used a different list for this question.<sup>13</sup>

## 8.6 SATISFACTION WITH TREATMENT

The module includes a question asking those whose last visit in the 12-month period before interview was to a hospital, family planning clinic or by a family planning fieldworker (ie not a private source, such as a pharmacy or private doctor), whether they were satisfied with the attention received during the last visit. Twelve countries, mostly the same ones which asked the recommended questions on other topics, also asked this question as suggested (see table 18). Some of these 12 obtained additional information: Kenya, Venezuela, Egypt and Turkey asked this question not only of women who had gone to ‘public’ sources, but of everyone who had been to a source in the last 12 months. Tunisia asked the recommended question, but only of those who attended family planning centres. In addition some indication of satisfaction was indirectly obtained by Ghana, Kenya and Indonesia, who

<sup>13</sup>The exceptions are:

Ghana	– Government hospital clinic; PPAG/Christian Council clinic; private doctor or clinic; pharmacy or shop; family planning fieldworker; mobile FP clinic
Morocco	– dispensary; health centre; centre de référence; clinic (maternité); private doctor; pharmacy; other
Fiji	– health centre; nurse outside health centre; mobile clinic; chemist; don’t know; other
Korea	– health centre; hospital; private doctor; drugstore; other
Pakistan	– FP worker; shop/agent; family welfare clinic; other clinic; private doctor; hospital; relative/friend; hakeem; other
Haiti	– health centre or hospital; private doctor; other sources such as pharmacy, etc
Portugal	– health centre; hospital; pharmacy; private doctor; midwife; other
Dominican Republic	– FP clinic; hospital; chemist; private doctor; other.
Panama	– FP clinic; Ministry of Health hospital; health centre of Ministry of Health; hospital/polyclinic of social security; private clinic or hospital; pharmacy; other
Paraguay	– CEPEP Consultorio; Consultorio de Proteccion Familiar; hospital; pharmacy; private doctor or other
Egypt	– FP centre; hospital; mobile unit for family planning; pharmacy; private doctor or clinic; other.

asked this group how long they had to wait before being attended, and by Lesotho, who asked the length of waiting time to all who had ever attended a source, in regard to the last source they had visited, regardless of when that visit had taken place.

A measure of satisfaction with availability of supplies may also be obtained from the questions on difficulties in obtaining supplies, used by Benin, Ivory Coast, Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Nepal, Paraguay, Venezuela, Korea, Pakistan and Sri Lanka (see the section on this topic below).

## 8.7 INTENTION TO VISIT AGAIN

Everyone who had been to a source in the last 12 months was asked whether they would return to the last visited source in the future, when advice/supplies were needed, allowing codes for the answer to be yes, no, or will not need again. Those who said they would not go again were asked an open ended question on their reasons. Thirteen countries asked these two questions, exactly as recommended, with only two small exceptions. Indonesia’s base population was currently married women who had been to a source in the last 12 months, rather than all women; and Egypt phrased this question, to refer to the respondent herself or someone else on her behalf, going back to the source of advice/supplies.

## 8.8 WHETHER CONSIDERED ATTENDING A SOURCE OF FAMILY PLANNING ADVICE OR SUPPLIES

The module also asked women who knew of one or more sources but who had not been to any source in the past 12 months, or who had never been to a source, two questions:

- ‘In the last 12 months did you yourself ever seriously think about getting family planning advice or supplies?’
- If yes: ‘Why is it that you decided not to?’

Eleven countries asked these questions as recommended (see table 18), while two others asked these questions but used different base populations:

- Indonesia – only currently married women who knew a place but had not been in the past 12 months were asked these questions.
- Philippines – only non-current users (including those who were not currently married) who also met the other conditions were asked these questions.

As for previous questions, Egypt included a phrase to cover sending someone else, on the respondent’s behalf, as well as she herself going.

## 8.9 DETAILS OF LAST METHOD USED

The family planning module recommended that a set of questions on the last method used be added to the fertility regulation module: the method last used was obtained; where the last method was a supply method the following

were obtained - usual place of supply, whether supplies always available, if not, what was the reason the last time they were not available; number of months the last method was continuously used; whether a different method was used previously and if so, the reasons for changing from the penultimate to the last method.

Morocco, Nepal, Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Paraguay and Venezuela asked the full set of questions to ever-users, as recommended. Egypt asked the full set of questions, but only to currently married ever-users, instead of all ever-users. Peru asked the recommended base group all questions except use of another method previously, and the reasons for changing. Trinidad & Tobago asked only non-pregnant, currently married, current-users questions, excluding the questions on whether supplies were always available, and if not, what was the reason the last time they were unavailable.

## 8.10 ADDED COUNTRY-SPECIFIC TOPICS

### Problems with getting supplies

The questions recommended on the last method used, described in the preceding section, obtain some information on difficulties in getting contraceptive supplies. Among all ever-users those whose last method used was a supply method (defined by the country, but usually the pill, condom, other female scientific methods and injections) were asked whether supplies were always available, and if not, the reasons for non-availability the last time it happened. The countries which obtained some information on problems with supplies in this way are Morocco, Nepal, Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Paraguay, Peru, Venezuela and Egypt, small exceptions being described in section 8.9. Other countries which obtained some data on this topic are:

- Benin and Ivory Coast — Both asked whether the method was difficult or easy to obtain, and if difficult, further asked whether this was because it was too far, too expensive or some other reason. Benin asked these questions only to those who knew the pill, but Ivory Coast asked any who knew either the pill, IUD, condom or other female scientific methods
- Pakistan — Asked non-pregnant currently married women who had used either the condom, durafoam/Emko or the pill, in the open interval and currently married pregnant women who had ever used any of these three methods, whether they or their husband had difficulty in getting supplies and, if so, what were the difficulties.
- Korea — Asked ever-users of the pill and condom whether they ever had any difficulties in obtaining supplies, and if so, what kind of difficulties, whether they had discussed these difficulties in getting supplies with a doctor, family planning worker, nurse or anyone like that. If they had done so, they were further asked who they discussed the problem with and whether these discussions had helped.

Malaysia — Asked ever-users of the pill and condom whether they had ever had any problems with obtaining supplies and, if so, what were the problems.

Sri Lanka — Asked ever-users of the pill only, whether there were any problems in getting supplies and, if so, what were the problems.

### Problems with method itself

Some information on this subject can be obtained from the open-ended question 'Why did you stop using?' put to women who had stopped using (before became pregnant, if closed interval) for the open and last closed interval. All countries shown in table 16 as having used the family planning module (ie open-ended) version of the question on 'Why stopped' would potentially have some information on this question. The text discussion on use in the open and closed interval indicates that some other countries also asked an open-ended question, although not as part of the family planning module. Another possible source of information on this subject is the open-ended question asking women why they had changed from the penultimate to the last method (see the discussion in section 8.9 on details of the last method used).

In addition to these sources of indirect information, four countries, Fiji, Korea, Malaysia and Sri Lanka asked direct questions on problems with methods. Fiji and Sri Lanka asked ever-users of the pill, IUD and condom, who stopped using after they first initiated use, why use had been stopped. Korea asked further questions on problems in use of methods: pill and IUD users were asked if they had any side effects from using, and if yes what were the side effects (open-ended); how severe were these side effects (very, somewhat, not so severe); and finally, if they ever saw someone to have the side effects treated. The same set of questions were asked about 'other difficulties' for pill, IUD, and condom users as well. Malaysia asked ever-users of the pill and IUD whether they had experienced problems with the method which required medical care and, if so, what were these problems. Condom users were simply asked if they had any problems with the method, other than obtaining supplies and, if so, which problems. Ever-users of the pill only were also asked if they had heard of any other problems which a person may have with this method and, if so, which problems.

### Family planning activities

Indonesia, Korea, Pakistan, Philippines, Sri Lanka and Egypt asked questions on the means by which women learned about family planning.

Indonesia asked for *each* of the types of media (newspaper or magazines, leaflets or booklets, billboards or posters, radio, television, movie, other):

- 'Have you ever heard about family planning in (on) . . . ?'
- If yes: 'Did you find the information . . . useful or not?'

Questions were also asked about *each* source (family planning fieldworker, midwife, doctor, male nurse, other):

- 'Have you ever talked about family planning with . . . ?'
- If yes: 'Was the information . . . useful or not?'

A question was also asked on attendance at meetings where family planning was discussed, and if so, which kind of meeting was most useful: general meeting; Koran reading; religious services; lottery meeting; other.

Finally Indonesia asked which kind of topic in family planning the woman would be most interested in learning about:

- what family planning is all about and why
- how to use specific methods
- where people can go.

Pakistan asked all currently married women whether family planning personnel had ever visited or met the respondent or her husband and, if yes, when was the last time. Korea asked all women whether a nurse or family planning worker had ever visited respondent in the home and, if yes, how many times in the last 12 months.

Philippines asked all women who had heard of at least one method, 'From whom or how did you learn about . . .?', allowing multiple answers with the codes being: radio; TV;

movie; folk method; printed matter; lecture or meeting; formal education; visit to medical places; schoolteacher or fieldworker; outreach worker or barrio supply point; friends; husband; parents; relatives; others. Women were further asked which was their most important source.

Sri Lanka took a different approach and asked those who had ever used the pill, loop and condom, 'How did you come to know about this method?', and the answers were coded: medical or paramedical person at a family planning clinic; family planning workers calling at home; any medical or paramedical person at some other place; her husband; some other source.

Egypt took a similar approach to Sri Lanka, asking all who knew at least one method, 'How did you know or hear of family planning methods?' The following sources were read out, and multiple answers allowed: husband; friends and relatives; private doctor; newspapers and magazines; radio or television; family planning centre; MCH centre; health unit; hospital and health visitor at home. Women were then asked which was the first source they heard from.

## 9 Factors Other Than Contraception Affecting Fertility

This module was designed to collect more detailed data than the core questionnaire on intermediate variables affecting the risk of conception, excepting only the use of contraception. The duration of breastfeeding was included in the core questionnaire, but the FOTCAF module goes further and obtains the duration of full breastfeeding by asking for the date when any other additional food was introduced. The FOTCAF module also asks about several additional variables which influence the risk of conception: the age at which menstruation began; the frequency and duration of menstrual periods; whether the woman thinks she is menopausal; frequency of sexual intercourse; frequency and duration of separations in the last two pregnancy intervals; and the duration of abstinence and amenorrhoea after each of the last two pregnancies. Most of the countries which used this module were in Africa and the Middle East, although two exceptions must be noted: Haiti in the Caribbean and Philippines in Asia also used the module. Typically these were countries with low levels of contraceptive use, so that the FOTCAF module was more relevant for the analysis of their fertility levels than either the family planning or fertility regulation modules.

We discuss the use of each of these topics in turn, referring to table 19, which summarizes use of FOTCAF questions. As table 19 shows, 16 countries used a substantial proportion of the module: Benin, Cameroon, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Lesotho, Mauritania, Nigeria, Senegal, Sudan, Tunisia, Philippines, Haiti, Egypt, Syria and Yemen AR. Twelve other countries asked one or more FOTCAF questions (Morocco, Bangladesh, Fiji, Korea, Nepal, Colombia, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Paraguay, Peru, Jordan and Turkey). The rest, 13 countries, asked only the core questions on breastfeeding.

### 9.1 MENSTRUATION CHARACTERISTICS

#### Age at first menstruation

It was recommended that all women in the sample be asked the question, 'How old were you when you had your first menstrual period?', allowing a code for 'not yet begun'. Fifteen of the 16 FOTCAF countries (see above) asked this question, the exception being Senegal. A few other countries also asked it – Nepal, Colombia and Jordan.

#### Duration and frequency of periods

It was recommended that these questions be asked to all women in the sample, including the never-married for all-woman samples. The questions were:

- Do your periods usually come at regular intervals? (with a code for 'no longer menstruating', who are skipped out of the next two questions)

- Is the time between your periods usually about a month or more than a month?
- For how many days do your periods usually last?

Altogether 13 countries asked some of these questions, 12 of them being FOTCAF countries, and Bangladesh being the added country (see table 19 for questions asked). The FOTCAF countries which did not ask these questions are Mauritania, Nigeria, Senegal and Haiti.

Apart from omission of particular questions, some additions and modifications also occurred. Benin and Ivory Coast asked women who answered 'more than a month' to the second question, 'What is the usual duration of this interval?' Egypt replaced the second question with a more exact one: 'On the average, how many days are there between the start of one period and the next?' Cameroon and Tunisia added a code for less than one month to the second question. Philippines added two questions, whether the flow was usually heavy or light, and when was the last period.

Cameroon also asked the date of the last period, and replaced the third question with, 'How many days did your most recent period last?', asked only of women whose last period occurred less than one year before. Mauritania and Haiti did not ask any of the recommended questions, but instead asked, 'How long ago was your last period?'

The recommended base populations, all women in the sample, was not always followed. Benin and Cameroon asked all except currently pregnant or currently amenorrhoeic women, while Kenya and Ivory Coast asked only ever-married women. Among the all-woman sample countries which asked one or more of these questions, only Ghana and Haiti addressed questions to the whole sample.

#### Menopause

In the FOTCAF module currently married, non-pregnant non-sterilized women who considered that they and their husband were physically incapable of having another child (ie that they were infecund) were asked, 'Do you think you are in the menopause?' Fourteen of the 16 FOTCAF countries asked this question, a few obtaining additional information as well. Of the other two countries, Egypt excluded the question completely, but Philippines, in asking the date of the last period, obtained some related information.

Cameroon and Haiti asked women how long ago was their last period, and only asked the question on menopause of women whose last period was one or more years ago. Cameroon also further restricted the base population to non-amenorrhoeic women, as for the other questions on menstruation, but did not exclude women who were sterilized or not currently in a union, as recommended in the module. Benin, Ivory Coast and Senegal also had no exclusion for sterilized women, because no specific



**Table 19** Use of factors other than contraception that affect fertility (mainly from FOTCAF module)<sup>a</sup>

Country	Menstruation characteristics				Separations						Breastfeeding <sup>b</sup>				Post-partum abstinence <sup>c</sup>		Post-partum amenorrhoea <sup>c</sup>	
	Age at menarche	Whether intervals regular	Duration between periods	Usual duration of period	Meno-pausal?	Any absences?	Date of first	Durations	Continuously apart?	Preg. during absence	If breastfed	Duration	Probe on duration	Age at weaning	Open interval	Closed interval	Open interval	Closed interval
<b>Africa</b>																		
Benin	✓	**	**	**	✓*	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓
Cameroon†	✓	**	**	**	✓*	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ghana†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ivory Coast†	✓	✓	✓*	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Kenya†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Lesotho†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Nigeria	✓	-	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓*	-	✓	✓*	✓	✓	✓
Senegal†	-	-	-	-	✓*	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-	-
Egypt	✓	✓	✓*	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	-	✓
Mauritania	✓	**	-	-	✓*	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-	✓	✓
Morocco	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓*	-	-	-	✓
Sudan N†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	✓	✓
Tunisia†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	-	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Asia and Pacific</b>																		
Jordan	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	**	-	-
Syria†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	**
Turkey	-	-	-	-	-	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	-	-	-	**	-	✓
Yemen AR†	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	**	**	**	**	✓	**	✓
Bangladesh	-	✓	✓	✓	-	**	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	**	✓	-	✓	-
Nepal	✓	-	-	-	-	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Pakistan	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓*	✓*	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sri Lanka	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Fiji	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	**	**	-	-	✓	-	✓	-
Indonesia	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Korea, Rep. of	-	-	-	-	-	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	✓*	-	-	-	-	-	-
Malaysia	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Philippines†	✓	✓	✓	✓	**	**	**	**	**	**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Thailand	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Americas</b>																		
Colombia	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	✓	-	-	-
Ecuador	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	**	✓	-	-	✓
Paraguay	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	**	✓	-	-	-
Peru	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	**	-	✓	-	✓
Venezuela	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	✓
Costa Rica	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	✓	-	-	-
Dominican Rep.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Mexico	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Panama	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Guyana	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Haiti†	✓	**	-	-	✓*	**	-	**	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
Jamaica	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
Trinidad & Tob.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Europe</b>																		
Portugal	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-

<sup>a</sup>Dashes (-) are used to indicate non-use of a question, instead of the usual symbol (X) because this makes it easier to identify those countries which did use the particular questions.

<sup>b</sup>Breastfeeding of births from the last two pregnancies, for those FOTCAF countries with a dagger (†) next to their name; or for the last two live births, for countries with no dagger, except for a few cases which collected additional data, described in the text.

<sup>c</sup>Post-partum abstinence and amenorrhoea is for the last two pregnancies for countries with a dagger (†) next to their name, and for the last two births for other countries.

✓ = Obtained data equivalent to module question.

✓\* = Obtained additional data and module information.

\*\* = Did not obtain data comparable with module.

- = Omitted question altogether.

questions were directly asked on sterilization as a method. Mauritania used the usual exclusion for sterilized women although no direct questions on sterilization were asked; presumably this was done to take care of cases where sterilization was volunteered as the current method. Mauritania asked the question differently, and obtained more information: infecund women were asked what was the reason for their infecundity, with one possible answer being menopause, and the others being illness, sterility, husband sterilized, wife sterilized, other reasons.

## 9.2 SEXUAL INTERCOURSE

The frequency of intercourse and the level of terminal abstinence are important determinants of the risk of conception but because of the sensitive nature of the subject, not many countries asked the recommended questions. Three questions were included in the module, to be asked of currently married women only:

- (1) 'Are you having sexual relations with your husband these days?' Only those who answered no were asked the second question:
- (2) 'Do you expect to resume sexual relations with your husband in the future?'  
Those who then answered no were further asked 'why not?'
- (3) Those who answered yes to questions (1) or (2) are asked (3) 'How many times a week (7 days) do you usually have sexual relations?'

Interpretation of the phrase 'these days' in the first question may well vary, but this question is more of a filter to the other two questions than of substantive interest in itself. The second question gives an estimate of terminal abstinence, while the third gives a measure of average frequency of intercourse.

Only eight countries asked any questions on sexual intercourse (apart from post-partum abstinence which is discussed below):

Country	Question (1)	Question (2)	Question (3)
Benin	**	X	**
Cameroon	√*	√*	**
Ghana	√	√	√
Ivory Coast	√	√	√
Kenya	√	√	X
Nigeria	**	√*	X
Philippines	X	X	**
Colombia	√*	X	√*

- √ = Asked as recommended  
 √\* = As recommended and more data  
 \*\* = Not asked as recommended  
 X = Not asked

Benin did not ask the general questions about intercourse these days, but instead asked a more precise question, 'When was the last time you had sexual relations with your partner?', expressing the answer as days, weeks, months and years ago. This question yields some information on two of the required questions: an objective interpretation of

'these days' can be applied to the data on time ago, and an estimate of frequency can be made from the 'current status' type of data obtained. Cameroon asked the first two questions as recommended and, moreover, increased the base, asking all women these questions, omitting the word 'husband' from the question. Question (3) was replaced by a 'current status' type question, and asked all who said they were having sexual relations these days, 'Did you have sexual relations last week?' Ghana and Ivory Coast asked all three questions as recommended, to currently married women only, while Kenya asked only the first two questions.

Nigeria modified the first question, asking only those currently married women who had resumed sexual relations since the last birth, 'Have you had sexual relations with your husband/partner in the last one month?' This more reasonable base population was possible because Nigeria did not ask these questions as part of the marriage history, but instead placed them after questions on post-partum abstinence. Those who answered no were further asked, 'How many months have passed since you last had sexual relations with your husband/partner?', as well as the usual question (2). Women who did intend to resume relations were asked in how many months they would do so. Question (3) was omitted by Nigeria.

The Philippines did not ask the usual set of questions, but instead asked currently married, non-pregnant women who were not abstaining, and whose husbands were not away during the last seven days, 'How many days during the last seven days did you have sexual relations?' The whole base group, including those whose husband was away, were asked how many days per week they usually had intercourse.

Colombia asked all currently married women whether they had sexual relations with their husband in the last week, and those who had done so were further asked how many times in the last week. In addition all currently married women were asked how many times per week they usually had sexual relations.

## 9.3 TEMPORARY ABSENCES

The module asks questions on absences of three months or more duration, which are not permanent, in the sense of separation, but which occur while the couple are married. The intention is to measure lengthy periods of non-exposure to intercourse and to the risk of pregnancy during marriage. Questions are asked separately on the open interval and the closed interval. Women who are not currently pregnant, and who are currently married, but not sterilized, are asked about the open interval. A further restriction on the base population for the open interval is that women whose open interval began with a pregnancy, and who are still in the period of post-partum abstinence, are also excluded, since by definition they had not been exposed in this interval, up to the interview date. The base population for closed-interval questions is all women who either have had one or more pregnancies, or who are currently pregnant for the first time, the start of the interval being either the penultimate pregnancy or the date of marriage.

The questions asked for the two intervals are mostly the same. Women are first asked whether there were any occasions in the interval when their husband worked away

from home for three or more months. If the answer is yes, the date of the first such absence is asked. A group of questions are then asked beginning with this first absence:

- How many months were you apart for the (first, second . . . ) time?
- During that time you were continuously apart without seeing each other, is that right?
- Were there any other times during the interval (specified) when you were temporarily apart for three or more months?

In the case of the open interval, a final question is asked: 'Has your husband returned home from that absence?' For closed intervals, a fourth question is added to the three above: 'Were you already pregnant when that absence began?', and if the answer is yes, no more questions on other absences are asked.

Seventeen countries asked some questions on this topic, but only about half asked the recommended questions to the module base population. Variations in base population and in questions are discussed below.

### Base population

The recommendation that questions be asked for intervals defined by pregnancies was not always followed. Two countries, Mauritania and Nepal, asked about the required two intervals, but defined them by live births, and in addition, Mauritania excluded zero live-birth women from all questions. Four countries did not ask about pregnancy intervals but about a period of time before the interview: the last 12 months for Cameroon, Haiti and Bangladesh, and the last five years for Turkey.

Countries also varied in whether women who were still abstaining after the last pregnancy/birth were excluded from questions on separations in the open interval. Some countries had not asked about post-partum abstinence (Mauritania, Senegal, Korea, Nepal and Turkey) and so they could not meet this recommendation. A few others did not exclude this group, even though they did establish post-partum abstinence at some point in the interview: Cameroon, Kenya, Tunisia, Bangladesh, Philippines and Haiti. Thus only Ghana, Ivory Coast, Lesotho, Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR used this exclusion.

Apart from Mauritania's exclusion of zero live-birth women, Tunisia, Ghana and Kenya also excluded those who had never been pregnant, or who were currently pregnant for the first time, from all questions. The countries which asked about a period of time before interview (Cameroon, Haiti, Bangladesh and Turkey) addressed questions to currently married women only.

### Variations in questions

As shown in table 19, a few countries asked the questions as recommended: Ivory Coast, Lesotho, Senegal, Sudan, Korea (with additional data, described below), Syria and Yemen AR. Other than for their changes in base population, a few other countries also followed the module in obtaining the recommended information Ghana, Kenya, Mauritania, Nepal and Philippines.

Some changes and additions were made by these 12

countries and by the remaining five countries also. One common modification was to broaden the reason for separation – the core question specified only work – to any reasons. All countries except Lesotho used a modification of this kind, but Nepal and Philippines used the most detailed statement, 'for example, when he worked away from home, or when one of you were in hospital or when you were visiting your parents'.

The restriction to recording absences of three or more months only was not used by Cameroon, Bangladesh, Nepal and Haiti, where absences of one or more months were counted. The duration of each absence was recorded in most countries, but in Bangladesh only the number of absences were coded, even though duration was asked.

Ghana and Kenya, instead of asking the date of the first absence, asked how long after the beginning of the interval the absence began. Syria and Yemen AR probed to ascertain whether the first absence for each interval began before or after the birth/pregnancy at the beginning of the interval.

Korea collected more information on this topic than any other country, asking about all absences in the woman's lifetime, exactly placing each in its appropriate pregnancy interval, and recording all the usual information, such as duration of the absence, whether the woman was already pregnant or became pregnant during that absence, and going further than the module, obtained the length of the period of overlap between the absence of pregnancy.

Tunisia did not ask the question on the date the first absence began, but all other questions were asked, as recommended.

Bangladesh, Cameroon and Haiti did not ask any of the recommended questions, but instead asked if there were any absences in the last year, the number of such occasions, and the duration of each absence. Bangladesh did not code the durations, however, while Cameroon was the only one of these three to ask the date of the first separation.

Although Turkey asked about the last five years for currently married women, not about specific pregnancy intervals, the module questions were all used, except for the closed-interval question on whether the respondent was already pregnant when the absence began. Turkey also added a few questions. If the husband was the absent person, women were asked where (place, district and province) he was living during the absence and why he was living there. If it was the respondent herself who was away, this was also recorded.

## 9.4 BREASTFEEDING

The core questionnaire recommended two questions be asked on each of the last two births, for all women in the sample with one or two births: whether the infant had been breastfed, and if so, the number of months that the child was breastfed, with a code for 'still breastfeeding' for the last child only. The FOTCAF module expanded the questions asked, but reduced the base population. The usual two questions were asked, as well as a probe question on the duration, 'After – months had you completely stopped breastfeeding your child even once a day?', and a question on the duration of full breastfeeding or the start of weaning: 'How many months old was the child when you began giving him/her additional food along with breastfeeding?',

with codes for 'no additional food given yet', applicable to the last child only, and 'died before additional food given', applicable to both of the two most recent children.

There are two sources of restriction of the base population used by the FOTCAF module, as compared with the core questionnaire. Since the module uses pregnancies to define intervals, no questions would be asked for cases where the outcome of the pregnancy was not a live birth. In practice this means that about 5–10 per cent of women would not be asked any questions for one or both of the last two pregnancies, if they were non-live pregnancies. In addition currently pregnant women with two or more pregnancies are only asked questions in relation to the pregnancy preceding the current one (that is in regard to the closed interval only), whereas in the core questionnaire this group of women would be asked about the two live births preceding the current pregnancy. Countries that used the FOTCAF definitions, in terms of base population, are: Cameroon, Ghana, Ivory Coast, Kenya, Lesotho, Senegal, Sudan, Tunisia, Haiti, Syria and Yemen AR. Although the Philippines used pregnancies to define intervals it treated currently pregnant women with two or more pregnancies differently from the FOTCAF module: breastfeeding of live births from both of the last two pregnancies was obtained. All others, including a few who used substantial portions of the FOTCAF module (Benin, Mauritania, Nigeria and Egypt) asked questions in relation to the last two live births.

### Omissions

Fiji did not ask any questions on the penultimate live birth, and instead only asked about the last birth. Yemen AR and Syria restricted the base population in regard to live births from the last pregnancy: sterilized or not currently married women were not asked about the last pregnancy. Ghana and Nigeria, countries that used most of the FOTCAF module, omitted the probe question on duration of breastfeeding.

Peru and Ecuador, which are not FOTCAF countries, asked the FOTCAF question on the duration of full breastfeeding (ie the age at which any food, other than mother's milk, was given) but did so only for the penultimate live birth, not for both recent births, as suggested by the module. These two countries added two special codes for this extra question: 'stopped breastfeeding before giving other food' and 'child died before starting other food'. Bangladesh, also not basically a FOTCAF country, asked the question on the age at weaning for the last birth only, adding a code for 'child died before other food'.

### Additions

Benin and Nigeria asked a few extra questions on children who had been breastfed and had died before 5 years of age:

- Did you feed (name of child) up to the day he/she died?  
If no:
- *Benin*: Did you stop breastfeeding because the child was too sick to suck, or for other reasons?
- *Nigeria*: Why did you stop breastfeeding him or her? (with a code for 'too weak or too ill')
- If stopped because the child was too weak to suck, a

question was asked on the duration of the period between stopping breastfeeding and the death of the child.

Benin and Nigeria also asked the usual questions on whether any other nourishment, bottle milk, or food was given to the child for this group of children. Bangladesh added a code for 'breastfed until child died', for both the last and penultimate births.

Nigeria, Ghana and Kenya added a question for the women with two or more births/pregnancies: 'were you still breastfeeding when you became pregnant again?', with Nigeria alone omitting from this question women whose child died before age 5. From the previous question on duration Kenya and Ghana identified the group who were currently pregnant and still breastfeeding the last child, and this group was not asked the question.

Cameroon, Morocco and Tunisia obtained more detailed information on weaning than the module recommended. They asked the child's age when bottle-feeding was started (after ascertaining whether the bottle was given) and also the age at which solid foods were first given to the child. Morocco also asked the age at which bottle-feeding was stopped. Paraguay ascertained the age at which milk was started, and separately, the age at which other food was given, for the last child only.

Three countries, Syria, Sudan and Thailand, added a code for 'still breastfeeding' even for the penultimate pregnancy. Nigeria also probed for children aged under 5 years, whether they were still being breastfed. Bangladesh added a probe question for those who reported breastfeeding the last birth for only 3 or fewer months: 'Are you still breastfeeding (name of child)?'

A major expansion of these questions was undertaken by Pakistan and Korea, where the two core breastfeeding questions were integrated with the birth history and asked in regard to each live birth. The only other countries to ask breastfeeding questions on births other than the last two were Nigeria and Benin. These two countries asked the full set of FOTCAF questions on the last two births, and then repeated these questions on the ante-penultimate birth, if it occurred within the five-year period before the date of interview.

## 9.5 POST-PARTUM ABSTINENCE AND AMENORRHOEA

The FOTCAF module recommended that women be asked about the duration of abstinence and amenorrhoea after the last pregnancy, and after the penultimate pregnancy, depending on whether they had only one or more than one past pregnancies, regardless of the outcome of the pregnancies. If the question on abstinence could not be answered, a probe question was asked on the age of the child in months, when sexual relations were resumed, for pregnancies whose outcome was a live birth. Codes for still abstaining/still amenorrhoeic were provided for status in the open interval, and a code for 'became pregnant again before period came back' was added for the question on amenorrhoea in the closed interval.

Of the 16 countries which used the FOTCAF module, most asked both questions for both intervals. The exceptions were Senegal, which omitted all questions on

these two topics, and Egypt and Mauritania, where questions on abstinence were omitted for both intervals. A few cases of changes in the recommended base population also occurred. Among the FOTCAF countries Benin, Mauritania, Nigeria and Egypt asked questions in relation to the last two live births rather than the last two pregnancies. All non-FOTCAF countries which asked some questions also did so in regard to live births, not pregnancies. The use of live births only or pregnancies, some of which would have resulted in miscarriages, abortions or still births, can make quite a difference, since amenorrhoea will definitely be shorter for non-fertile pregnancies, and abstinence may also be shorter, especially if it is related to breastfeeding.

In addition to this basic variation in base population, Syria and Yemen AR excluded sterilized and not currently married women from questions on open-interval abstinence and amenorrhoea.

Benin and Nigeria rephrased the question on abstinence in the open interval for women who had not had any other pregnancies since the last birth, first asking whether sexual relations had been resumed, and only if the answer was yes asking the question on duration of abstinence. Those who had not yet resumed sexual relations were asked, in Benin, whether they expected to do so later and, if so, in how many months. Nigeria simply asked in how many months they expected to resume, allowing a code for 'never' and probing those who answered 'never' about their reasons. Essentially, the same information was obtained by these two countries.

Benin and Nigeria also asked the full set of questions for the birth before the penultimate one, if it occurred in the five-year period before interview. Sudan, Syria and Yemen AR probed women who gave 40 days as the duration of post-partum abstinence: 'Try to remember whether the interval without sexual relations was exactly 40 days or less or more'.

As seen in table 19, a few non-FOTCAF countries asked questions, but in all cases for one interval only: on both subjects (Bangladesh, Fiji, Ecuador and Peru); only on abstinence (Colombia, Costa Rica and Paraguay); or only on amenorrhoea (Jordan and Turkey). Except for the qualification made above in regard to defining intervals by births rather than pregnancies all countries except Jordan and Turkey asked comparable questions to the FOTCAF module. Jordan asked the duration of amenorrhoea only to women who had their last child in the six years before interview, while Turkey asked women who breastfed their last child whether they had menstruated last month, obtaining the current status of amenorrhoea.

## 9.6 HEIGHT AND WEIGHT MEASUREMENTS

Although the module recommended these measurements, only two countries, Lesotho and Bangladesh obtained them. This was probably at least partly due to the practical difficulties of carrying the necessary equipment in the field.

## 10 Infrequently Used Modules

### 10.1 COSTS AND BENEFITS OF CHILDREN

This topic was recommended to be used as part of the module on economic variables. Five of the 41 countries asked some questions on the costs and benefits of children in the individual survey, although the questions were not in general identical. Bangladesh, Malaysia, Jamaica and Egypt added separate sections on this topic, and Korea combined the topic with the work history of the respondent. Jamaica restricted this topic to women who currently had a partner, and Egypt restricted it to women who had one or more living children. In addition Egypt and Thailand covered this topic in their husbands' survey, which meant that some data was obtained by six countries altogether.

#### Costs of children

##### *Education*

All six countries considered the education of children to be the most important aspect of their cost. Respondents were first asked what level of education they thought boys and girls (separately) should have. The phrasing of the question varied slightly – Egypt and Korea asked the level the parents *expected* of the children while the other four countries asked what the parent thought was the *minimum* amount of education the child would need. All six countries, except Egypt, then asked whether the respondent's family could afford that level of education. The phrasing of this second question varied too. Korea, Thailand and Jamaica asked whether providing the education would be a very, somewhat, or not a heavy burden; Malaysia asked whether the family could afford the education; and Bangladesh asked whether the respondent expected the sons/daughters to attain that level and, if not, why not, using the codes: education too expensive; child not capable; child has to work; education not useful; other. Bangladesh alone asked a factual question, whether any of the children were attending school currently, and obtained the age and sex of those who were.

In the husband's survey, Thailand asked general questions on the advantages and disadvantages of small and large families, and whether for a family in 'similar circumstances to that of the respondent', how difficult it would be to raise two, four or six children.

##### *Child care*

A second important aspect of the costs of children is their effect on the mother's ability to work: she may not work at all, or alternatively, if she did work, her income is reduced by costs of child care. Only Malaysia asked a hypothetical question to all women: 'Would having children make it difficult for you to work as much as you want to, or not?', and probed both yes and no answers about their reasons.

Jamaica asked questions to a specific group of women: currently married, with living children under 14, living in their household, and who had either worked in the family farm or business or elsewhere, for pay or profit, in the last 12 months. The first question was:

- 'Some women find that having to look after children makes it difficult for them to work. In your case, does caring for children interfere with your work?'

Those who answered yes were further asked whether it interfered a great deal, moderately or only a little. Women were also asked how children were cared for when they were at work, with the following answers being possible: children are old enough; works at home; takes children to workplace; older children or other family takes care; day-care centre; household help; neighbours, friends or private care-takers; other means. Those who gave the last two answers were asked if they paid someone to look after the children. Among this selected subgroup of women, those who were fecund, as well as all other currently married, fecund women were asked whether having another (or a) child would make it inconvenient for them to work (approximately the same question asked by Malaysia), further asking those who answered yes whether it would make a great deal, moderate or only a little interference.

Although Ecuador, Trinidad & Tobago and Turkey also asked some questions on child care (see section 3.2) these questions were not directed towards the question of children's interference with work, but simply established the type of child-care arrangements.

Jamaica also asked currently married women who had *not* worked in the last 12 months and who had children aged 14 or under, 'If you were to take a job, how would your children be cared for while you are at work?', with the same codes as mentioned above, for women who had worked last year, and one added code, 'no means or difficult to provide adequate child care'. This group and, as before, the last two groups (neighbours, friends or private caretakers and other means) were asked whether they would have to pay for child care.

In the husband's survey Thailand asked approximately the same questions as Jamaica, to a similar base population ie with children under age 14, and to currently married men, with the difference that men, not their wives were the respondents.

#### Benefits from children

The benefits of having children were measured by questions on a number of topics:

- their earnings and contribution to the family
- their help around the house or in the family business or farm

- a source of financial support in old age
- to provide a place for parents to live.

These topics were dealt with in varying ways by the five countries.

#### *Earnings*

Bangladesh simply asked whether any of the children had worked for money in the last 12 months (to those respondents with children aged over 5 and if so, which children, listing them by age and sex, and including any who were no longer living in the household as well). Thailand also asked, separately for unmarried and married children, whether any earned money and whether they contributed some of their earnings to the household, and if so, whether it was a regular or an occasional contribution. A separate question ascertained whether parents can expect financial help from unmarried and married children. Jamaica asked a similar question, about children aged 14+, whether right now any were working, and if they were contributing. Some more hypothetical questions were asked by Korea – whether the respondent expected children to give her part of their wages when they started earning, and how certain was she that this would happen, very, somewhat, not so certain; and by Malaysia – whether, considering the changes that have taken place, the respondent thought that young people nowadays were more or less willing to give part of their earnings to parents, coded as more, just as, less willing, don't know, depends.

#### *Help with work*

Korea asked whether the respondent expected children to help with work around the house, on the family farm or in the family business, and how certain she was that this would happen – very, somewhat, not so certain. Malaysia, Thailand, Egypt (in both surveys) and Jamaica asked at what age would you say sons (and separately for daughters) begin to make a useful contribution to work that needs to be done. Jamaica also asked, separately for respondents with children aged 9 or less and those with children aged over 10 years, how much help was being given in the family farm or business by the children. Thailand also asked how much help was being given in the house and in the family farm or business, without any age restriction.

#### *Financial support in old age*

Korea asked whether the respondent expects children to support her in old age, and how certain was she that it would actually happen – very, somewhat, not so certain. Malaysia also asked a hypothetical question, as in (1) above – whether, considering the changes that have taken place, the respondent thought that young people nowadays were more or less willing to support their parents in old age, coded as more, just as, less willing, dk, depends. Malaysia, Thailand, Egypt (in both surveys) and Jamaica also asked respondents who had living children, or in the case of Malaysia who were currently married and fecund, whether in old age they expected to rely on children for financial support a good deal, only a little, not at all, depends. Jamaica, Egypt (in both surveys), Thailand and Malaysia also placed financial support from children in context by asking which means of financial support the respondents thought they would have when they become old (Egypt

restricting this question to parents who had living children, and Jamaica to currently in union women):

From children  
 Family other than children  
 Savings, or income from farm, business, other property  
 Pension or social security  
 Other

Egypt added a code for 'help from friends'.

#### *Living with parents*

Korea asked whether the respondent expected her children to live with parents after they were married, and how certain she was that this would actually happen – very, somewhat, not so certain. Malaysia asked the same hypothetical question as before, about whether young people were more or less willing to live with their parents after they were married. Malaysia, Egypt and Jamaica asked respondents who had living children, or in the case of Malaysia, who were currently married and fecund, whether they expected to live with their children at anytime, when the children were married, and if so, whether this would be for a few years, for the rest of her life, or only when she was old. Thailand and Egypt asked similar questions in their husband's surveys, Egypt in regard to married children, and Thailand in regard to when the parents were old.

Korea approached this topic from a different angle, asking respondents about their relationship with their own parents and parents-in-law, asking about each separately:

If she was living with any of her parents (parents-in-law);  
 If no, whether she had ever lived with any since first married whether any were still living;  
 If any were living, how often she saw any of them: once/week; once/month; few times/year; less often.

## 10.2 HEALTH CARE

Several Latin American and African countries asked questions on aspects of maternal and child health care. The topics covered were medical attention to the mother during pregnancy and at the delivery, and attention to the child in the early part of its life, especially in terms of vaccinations. The Latin American countries asked questions concerning the last pregnancy only, or live births from the last pregnancy, except for the Dominican Republic where the base population was all women who had a pregnancy during the last year, and live births from these pregnancies were the subject of the questions. In contrast, African countries asked questions on the live births from the last two pregnancies (Cameroon, Ghana), the last live birth only (Ivory Coast) or the last two live births (Benin, Mauritania, Morocco and Nigeria). Benin and Nigeria also asked questions on the live birth before the penultimate one, if it was born in the five-year period before the interview.

#### **Medical attention during the last pregnancy**

Seven countries asked some questions on whether the respondent had received medical care during the last pregnancy:

Country	Whether any attention received	Who attended	Where
Dominican Rep.	✓	x	✓
Ecuador	✓	✓	✓
Mexico	✓	✓	✓
Paraguay	✓	✓	x
Peru	✓	✓	✓
Ivory Coast	✓	x	x
Nigeria	✓	x	x

✓ = Yes; x = No

In addition to direct questions on these topics, two countries obtained more information. Mexico not only asked whether the respondent had any attention, but also obtained the duration of her pregnancy when she started receiving attention. Ivory Coast asked whether the respondent had been to a clinic and the number of times she went. The codes for the person attending were as follows:

- Ecuador — doctor; registered midwife or other paramedical assistant; voluntary rural helper; traditional midwife; other
- Mexico — doctor; registered midwife or other paramedical personnel; traditional midwife
- Paraguay — doctor; registered midwife; traditional midwife; other
- Peru — doctor; registered midwife; traditional midwife; other.

While the codes for places where attention was received were:

- Dominican Republic — Public hospital; social security hospital; armed forces hospital; private clinic; CEA clinic or hospital; other. (If hospital, polyclinic or dispensary, the name and location were obtained.)
- Ecuador — hospital/maternity hospital; clinic (social security, IESS); private clinic or doctor; health centre; clinic (armed forces, FFAA); own house; other
- Peru — maternity hospital; private clinic; private physician; small state clinic (posta medica); own house; other
- Mexico — health centre or hospital of SSA; clinic or hospital of IMSS; clinic or hospital of ISSSTE; other medical institutions financed by the state; private physician, clinic or hospital; small clinic (dispensario, institucion de asistencia); in the house of an unqualified midwife; in your own house.

### Medical attention at and after childbirth

Twelve countries asked some questions on attendance at childbirth, while two asked about post-natal care for the mother:

Country	Who attended delivery	Where was delivery	Post-natal care	
			If any	Where
Dominican Rep.	x	✓	x	x
Ecuador	✓	✓	✓	✓
Mexico	✓	✓	x	x
Paraguay	✓	✓	x	x
Peru	✓	✓	✓	✓
Benin	✓	✓	x	x
Cameroon	✓	✓	x	x
Ghana	✓	✓	x	x
Ivory Coast	✓	✓	x	x
Mauritania	✓	✓	x	x
Morocco	✓	✓	x	x
Nigeria	✓	✓	x	x

✓ = Yes; x = No

Ecuador, Mexico, Paraguay and Peru used the same codes for the person attending the delivery as shown above for pre-natal care, except that a code was added for the woman giving birth alone or her husband being the only one present at the delivery. The codes by the seven African countries varied slightly:

- Benin — nurse or midwife; any other; no-one
- Cameroon — doctor; midwife or nurse; family member; other
- Ghana — doctor or trained midwife; traditional midwife; other
- Ivory Coast — doctor, trained midwife; nurse; traditional midwife; relative or other
- Mauritania — doctor, trained midwife or nurse; traditional midwife; other
- Morocco — doctor, trained midwife or paramedical; traditional midwife; some other person; other
- Nigeria — doctor, trained midwife or nurse; traditional birth attendant; family member; no-one; other.

Again for Dominican Republic, Ecuador, Mexico and Peru, the codes for the place of delivery were the same as those given above for the location of pre-natal care. Codes for other countries are:

- Paraguay — hospital or clinic; health care; private clinic; private physician; home; other
- Benin }  
Ghana } — hospital or clinic; home; other  
Mauritania }  
Nigeria }
- Cameroon — hospital; dispensary; home; other
- Ivory Coast — maternité; other
- Morocco — hospital; private clinic; home; other.



Only Ecuador and Peru asked about medical care after the birth (puerperal care), and where such care was received. The same codes as for pre-natal care were used by Ecuador, and also for Peru, except that 'own home' was excluded and 'health centre' was added.

#### Medical care of infant

A few countries asked whether the child was taken to the doctor early in its life and, if so, where, as well as enquiring whether any vaccinations had been given, where this was done, and which vaccinations. Questions were asked as follows:

	Care in Early Life		Vaccinations		
	If Any	Where	If Any	Where	Which ones
Dominican Rep.	√*	×	√	√*	×
Ecuador	√	√	√	√	×
Mexico	√	√	√	√	√*
Paraguay	√	√	√	×	×
Peru	√	√	√	√	×
Morocco	×	×	**	**	**
Nigeria	×	×	√	×	×

√ = Yes

× = No

√\* = More than usual

\*\* = Not comparable with others

All five Latin American countries asked some questions on medical care of the child early in its life. If it was a live birth, whether he/she had been taken to see a doctor. All except the Dominican Republic added the phrase 'during the first (days) months of life and, if so, where', using the relevant codes of the above lists. The Dominican Republic asked two questions instead of the one general question used by the other two countries:

- Whether the child had been taken because of illness/accident;
- Whether taken for a check up.

Questions on vaccination were asked by these five Latin American countries, as well as by Morocco and Nigeria. Morocco, however, enquired about vaccinations for children (the last and penultimate) who were aged 2-10 only, whereas all other countries asked about vaccinations during the first few months of life regardless of the current age of the child. However, Morocco also asked the age of the child when he/she was first vaccinated, and recorded dates of vaccinations from certificates or cards, where these were available.

Only five of the seven countries asked where the vaccination had been given, Paraguay and Nigeria omitting this question. The Dominican Republic obtained the name and address of the place if it was at a hospital, dispensary or polyclinic. Mexico asked those who went to the public hospital or clinic whether they were satisfied with the treatment and, if not, why not. Those who had gone to a private doctor or some other source were asked why they did not go to the public dispensary in their administrative district.

Only Mexico and Morocco asked which specific vacci-

nations were given to children. Mexico asked whether the child had been vaccinated for polio, diphtheria, whooping cough, tetanus (DPT), tuberculosis (BCG), measles and smallpox. If vaccination for either DPT or polio had been administered, a further question on the number of treatments was asked. Mexico also probed those who had not taken the child to the doctor or had it vaccinated, 'why not?'

Morocco recorded whether vaccinations for smallpox, tuberculosis, diphtheria, recorded tetanus and polio had been administered, and recorded the number of treatments and dates of each treatment, for diphtheria, tetanus and polio, where cards or certificates were available. In addition, Morocco asked a separate set of questions on knowledge about vaccinations - which illnesses a child should be vaccinated against, at what age (for each illness mentioned) and for polio and diphtheria-tetanus separately, how many treatments the child needed to be fully vaccinated, and at what intervals these should be given.

#### Other questions

On a separate topic, Panama asked all women, in section 1, Respondent's Background, if they knew what *cancer detection* or the Pap smear test was and, if yes, if they knew how often one ought to have the test and if they had ever had the test done. If they had never had the test, they were asked if they were interested in having it, and also why they had not taken it so far.

### 10.3 SEXUAL RELATIONS HISTORY OF THE PAST YEAR

The history of the past year is essentially classified each month into three types of status, pregnancy, no sexual relations or contraceptive use, in that order of precedence. There was a residual exposure category, where the woman was not pregnant and not contracepting, but having sexual relations.

Dominican Republic and Venezuela alone used this module. All women who had ever had sexual relations were asked whether they had been pregnant during the past year and, if so, whether they had used any contraception before becoming pregnant. If they had, the method was obtained. The interviewer also recorded whether the pregnancy occurred while using contraception or not. The months spent in pregnancy were identified, and the outcome of any pregnancy (live birth, still birth or miscarriage) was also recorded.

Women were then asked whether they were any months of the year when she did not have sexual relations (for pregnant women the months spent pregnant were omitted). If the answer was positive, then the reason was obtained (not married, abstinence, separation, illness, others), and the specific months spent without sexual relations were obtained.

All women were then asked whether they had used any contraception during the months when they did have sexual relations (omitting months spent pregnant). If so, the methods used were obtained, as were the months during which they were used.

#### 10.4 HUSBAND'S SURVEY

Three countries, Egypt, Ivory Coast and Thailand, carried out a husband's survey, requiring a separate interview and using a full questionnaire. Much of the information obtained in this survey was similar to that from the woman's survey, but it gave another perspective. Some background information was obtained, such as date of birth (all three countries), education, literacy and childhood place of residence (Egypt and Ivory Coast only), occupation (Ivory Coast and Thailand only) and Ivory Coast alone further obtained additional details about employment – whether currently working or looking for work, work status, type of payment and number of employees.

The three countries differed in their questions on marriage. Ivory Coast obtained only age at beginning the current marriage, and some details of the current union (type of union and number of wives). Thailand obtained age at beginning the current marriage but also asked whether there had been any earlier marriages. Egypt collected a full marriage history and the number of children from each marriage.

On the subject of fertility, all three countries asked the number of children of the current marriage; Egypt and Ivory Coast also asked the number living at home and away, and the number who had died. Thailand also asked the number of children from previous marriages and the number adopted. A birth history of all these children, identifying their parentage, was also obtained by Thailand. All three countries asked whether the wife was currently pregnant, and whether a boy or girl was preferred.

Contraceptive knowledge and use was covered by similar questions to those used for women's surveys, including the full table of probes on specific methods. Egypt and Ivory Coast also asked about current use of contraception, and use in the open interval, and probed never-users about their intentions to use in the future. All three countries asked the husband whether he wanted (more) children, and if so whether a boy or girl was preferred for the next and how many (more) children he desired, as well as the usual question on the total number of children he would like if he could choose. In addition Egypt and Ivory Coast asked what he thought his wife's preferences were on both these areas – additional and total number of children desired, and whether the couple had discussed the question of the total number of children desired. Egypt alone also asked whether the last birth was wanted, and whether the couple were physically able to have another child, should they desire to do so.

Egypt alone asked some questions on family planning – the sources of finding out about it, whether the couple discussed the subject, and for those who had ever heard of the pill, IUD and condom, the source, time to get there and means of transport as well as the expected cost of each method, should they want to obtain it.

Apart from these usual topics, Egypt and Thailand asked about the costs and benefits of children, and Thailand about child care. These questions are discussed earlier in this chapter in section 10.1. Thailand also include questions on women's work opportunity, which are briefly discussed under the sub-section 'Questions on Added Topics', in section 3.2.

# 11 Community-Level Module

Apart from the attributes of the individual or the household in which he/she lives, characteristics of the areal unit within which the household is located may also influence the individual's behaviour. Freedman (Community-level Data in Fertility Surveys, *WFS Occasional Paper* no 8, 1974) pinpointed two types of ecological factors: the 'global' ones, for which a corresponding measurement cannot be made for individuals, such as the presence or absence of particular institutions, or the quality of transportation services; and the 'contextual' variables, which are based on the aggregation of individual measures, such as the mean educational level or the occupational composition, of the population of that community. Although data could be collected for more than one level in the hierarchy of social units, the WFS survey did so for only one level and, almost always, only in rural areas (exceptions are Mexico and Cameroon which asked some questions on urban areas as well). Only 17 WFS countries used a community-level module, with quite large differences in the amount and type of information collected.<sup>14</sup> We organize the discussion of questions used under several major topics: transportation; communication; education; health; family planning; access to government and financial institutions; agriculture; modernization and other country-specific subjects. The tables summarize use of the questions, and comments are made mainly to describe additions to and differences from the general pattern.

## 11.1 TRANSPORTATION

The intention of questions on this topic was to obtain a measure of the quality of transportation within the community and between the community and larger towns. The distance between the community and either the closest larger centre, or a number of other centres, ranked by size or by administrative level, and occasionally the closest market centre also, was obtained by several countries (see table 20). Two countries asked about more than one centre by size:

Malaysia	> 10,000; 20,000–75,000; > 75,000
Pakistan	10,000+; 50,000+; 100,000+

Countries which asked the distance to one or more administrative centres generally referred to the capital or administrative centre for progressively larger areal units, specific to each country.

Quite a few countries asked about the type of transport available for getting to these centres. Bangladesh and Egypt asked for the most common or usual mode of transport, while Mauritania and Thailand obtained all possible modes

of transport. Korea and Mexico obtained the most commonly used mode of transport to the closest market centre only, while Malaysia asked the usual and the most advanced modes of transport to towns of 10,000 or more population, as well as the usual and most advanced types of transport for carrying produce to market. Only Korea, Thailand and Egypt asked about travel time to larger centres. Thailand asked the fare as well.

Mauritania, Thailand and Syria asked about the types of roads connecting the community and larger centres. In the case of Mauritania, the question was not asked in regard to the country's capital city, but to all other types of centres, while Syria asked only about roads to the next higher type of centre, the capital of the nahiya, but not about more important administrative centres. Thailand obtained the types of transportation systems and roads to both levels of larger administrative centres, and within a five-kilometre radius of the community, in greater detail than was usually found.

Questions were also asked on the presence or absence within the community of various types of roads and modes of transport (see table 20). Some countries further asked, for communities with no modern types of road or transport, how far away was the closest place with that type of road or transport. Cameroon asked urban communities whether transport was impossible at some times of the year. Ivory Coast, where only rural communities were asked this module, also asked whether any of the two non-asphalted types of roads were cut off at some times of the year and, if so, for how much time and during which months. Nigeria asked communities which had an asphalted road whether it had been there five years ago. Several countries (Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Nigeria, Bangladesh and Malaysia) essentially identified only the presence of tarred or asphalted roads, with very little other classification. Three countries asked about roads giving access to the village, from other centres, rather than roads within the community (Pakistan, Mexico and Syria). Pakistan also obtained the distance to the nearest motorable road for all communities; communities which were not on any road were asked the distance away from the closest earth road and the closest metalled road, while those on either an earth or brick road were asked the distance away from the nearest metalled road.

Some countries did not ask the usual question to obtain a list of all forms of transport available. Cameroon asked urban communities whether there was any bus stop in that zone and, if not, the distance to the closest town, as well as asking whether there was a regular taxi service. Rural communities were asked what was the usual means of transport to get to particular types of roads, if none were in the community itself, and whether at least one person owned a vehicle. The Ivory Coast asked only whether one can get a local taxi into the nearest town and, if not, the distance or time taken to get to the nearest place with a taxi.

Sudan obtained the presence or absence of several types

<sup>14</sup> In addition reference should be made to the household schedule, chapter 1, where many countries obtained data on some aspects of development, at the level of the household.

**Table 20** Community module: questions on transportation (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)

Country	Distance to nearest centre(s):				To nearest centre(s):			Within community:			
	Nearest one	> one centre, by size	> one centre, administr. levels	Market centre	Type of transport	Travel time	Type of roads	Roads		Transport	
								Types	Nearest	Type	Nearest
Cameroon U <sup>a</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	✓*	—	**	**
R <sup>a</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	✓	✓	**	**
Ivory Coast	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	✓*	—	**	**
Mauritania	—	—	✓	✓	✓	—	✓	—	—	—	—
Nigeria	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓*	✓	—	—
Sudan N	✓	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	✓	✓
Bangladesh	—	—	✓	—	✓	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Korea, Rep. of	—	—	✓	—	✓	✓	—	—	—	—	—
Malaysia	—	✓	—	✓	✓	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pakistan	—	✓	—	—	—	—	—	**	—	—	—
Thailand	—	—	✓	—	✓	✓	✓	—	—	✓	✓
Ecuador	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	✓	—
Mexico	✓	—	—	✓	✓*	—	—	**	—	—	—
Peru	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	—	✓	—
Egypt	—	—	✓	—	✓	✓	—	**	✓	—	—
Jordan	✓	—	—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓
Syria	—	—	✓	—	—	—	✓	**	✓	✓	✓

<sup>a</sup>U = Urban communities; R = Rural communities.

✓ = Asked usual type of question.

\*\* = Asked question(s) on topic but substantially different from other countries.

✓\* = Asked for more than the usual information on this topic.

of transport, and the distance from the nearest village with any of them. Bangladesh, Malaysia, Thailand and Jordan obtained distance away from more than one particular form of transport. Syria obtained the types of transport used to get to the village and, if bus, taxi or train were all not among the available types, then the distance away from the nearest of them was obtained.

## 11.2 COMMUNICATIONS

The main means of communications covered in these questionnaires are the post office, telephone, cinema, radio, newspaper, television and telegraph, ascertaining the presence or absence of each means separately and, if it is absent, then the distance to the nearest place with the facility is asked (see table 21). A few countries also asked how many radios and television were in the community as well as the regularity of newspaper availability. Sixteen countries asked some questions on this topic, Ivory Coast being the only country with a community module which asked none. We briefly mention additions or incomparabilities for each means of communication in turn.

### Post office

Nigeria asked communities which had one whether it existed five years ago. Malaysia asked how many post offices were in the community, whether there was a regular mail delivery and collection system and how many letters were posted and delivered each day. The Philippines also asked if there was a mail delivery service. Cameroon did not obtain the

distance to the nearest place with a post office, if there was none, but instead asked the usual transport used and the travel time. Korea obtained the distance and travel time for the average resident, for post offices both within and outside the community (burak). Philippines obtained both distance and travel time for the average person, when there was no post office within the barangay.

### Telephone

Nigeria also asked whether telephones were available five years ago, when there was one or more at the time of interview. Malaysia asked how many telephones there were in the community, and how many calls were received and sent out per day. As in the case of the post office, Cameroon obtained the usual type of transport and travel time, when no telephone was available, but not distance to the nearest place with a telephone. Korea and Philippines collected extra information in regard to accessibility, as described above for a post office.

### Cinema

Again Nigeria ascertained whether a cinema was present five years ago, where there was one at present. Three countries asked about the frequency of cinema shows. Philippines only recorded the presence of cinemas which had a show at least once per week. Sudan asked how many times a month the mobile movie unit visited the village, and Malaysia recorded whether the frequency of shows was daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, occasionally, or none at all. Korea and Philippines obtained the same extra infor-

**Table 21** Community module: questions on communication<sup>a</sup> (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)

Country	Post office		Telephone		Movies		Radio		Newspaper				Television			Telegraph		Added questions
	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	Number	P/A	D	Regular	P/A	D	Number	P/A	D	
Cameroon	√	**	√	**	-	-	√*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Mauritania	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Nigeria	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sudan N	-	-	-	-	√*	-	√	-	√	√	√	√	√	-	√	-	√	-
Bangladesh	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	√	√	-
Korea, Rep. of	√*	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	-	√	√	√*	-	-	-	√	-	-	√
Malaysia	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	√	-	√	√	√*	-	√	√	-	√	√	-
Pakistan	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	-	-	-	√	√	√
Philippines	√*	√*	√	√*	**	√*	-	-	-	-	√*	√*	-	-	-	√	√	√
Thailand	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	-	-	-	√	-	-	√	-	-	-	-
Ecuador	√	-	√	-	√	-	√	-	-	-	√	-	-	√	-	-	-	-
Mexico <sup>b</sup>	√	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	-	-
Peru	√	-	√	-	√	-	√	-	-	-	√	-	-	√	-	-	-	-
Egypt	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	**	-	-	-	-	-
Jordan	√	√	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-
Syria	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	√	-	-

<sup>a</sup>P/A = Presence or absence; D = Distance to nearest, if none present.

<sup>b</sup>Both urban and rural communities asked these questions.

√ = Asked usual type of question.

\*\* = Asked question(s) on this topic but substantially different from other countries.

√\* = Asked for more than the usual information on this topic.

mation in regard to accessibility, as described above for post offices.

#### Radio

Cameroon asked if radios in the community could receive Radio Yaoundé and the provincial station. Most countries did not ask distance to the nearest place with radios, but several asked how many radios there were in the community (see table 21).

#### Newspaper

Korea asked only the proportion of households which received newspapers, while Philippines defined the presence of newspapers to include availability either for sale or for public reading. Malaysia enquired whether there was regular delivery of any newspaper, how many papers (of any type) were circulating in the community, and whether they were read by most, some or none of the population. A few other countries also enquired whether newspapers were regularly available (see table 21).

#### Television

Table 21 shows that a few countries asked about the availability of televisions and the number in the community, but only Jordan asked the distance to the nearest place with one, when there was none. Egypt did not ask the usual question on presence or absence, but instead asked whether there was a place where women could watch television, and whether there were any coffee shops with a television.

#### Added questions

Korea also asked about the presence of amplifier systems, a community centre and an old people's recreation centre.

Pakistan asked if there were any rest houses, separately for three organizations, WAPDA, Irrigation and Canal. Philippines asked if there were any coffee houses or restaurants and, if not, the distance and average travel time to the closest one.

### 11.3 GOVERNMENT AND OTHER INSTITUTIONS

#### Police station

Cameroon asked about a gendarme brigade and a station separately; Nigeria asked communities which had one whether it was there five years ago. The Philippines asked about the presence of a policeman, not a station, while Ecuador and Peru referred to official security services in general. For communities without a station, Cameroon obtained the usual type of transport used and travel time taken to get to the nearest place with one, not the distance away. Korea obtained usual travel time and mode of transportation as well as distance to the nearest place, while Philippines obtained travel time and distance.

#### Banks

Nigeria asked if communities with a bank had one five years ago, while Korea asked about the presence of either a bank or a co-operative and, as in the case of the police station, asked for travel time and mode of transportation as well as distance.

#### Government offices

Twelve countries asked about this topic, mentioning various types of official offices:

**Table 22** Community module: questions on institutions<sup>a</sup> (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)

Country	Police station		Bank		Government offices		Courts		Co-operative		Other institutions/ organizations	
	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D
Cameroon	√*	**	—	—	√	**	—	—	—	—	—	—
Ivory Coast	—	—	—	—	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—
Mauritania	√	√	—	—	√	√	√	√	—	—	—	—
Nigeria	√*	√	√*	√	—	—	√*	√	—	—	—	—
Sudan N	—	—	—	—	√	√	—	—	√	√	√	√
Bangladesh	√	√	√	√	—	—	—	—	√*	—	—	—
Korea, Rep. of	√	√*	**	√*	√	√*	—	—	—	—	—	—
Malaysia	√	√	—	—	√	√	√	√	—	—	—	—
Philippines	**	√*	—	—	√	—	√	√*	√	√*	—	—
Thailand	—	—	—	—	**	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Ecuador	√*	—	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Mexico <sup>b</sup>	—	—	—	—	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—
Peru	√*	—	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Egypt	√	√	√	√	√	√	—	—	√	√	—	—
Jordan	—	—	—	—	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—
Syria	—	—	—	—	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

<sup>a</sup>P/A = Presence or absence; D = Distance to nearest if none there.

<sup>b</sup>Both urban and rural communities asked these questions.

√ = Asked usual type of question.

\*\* = Asked question(s) on topic but substantially different from other countries.

√\* = Asked more than the usual information on this topic.

Cameroon	— prefecture; sub-prefecture
Ivory Coast	— vital registration office
Mauritania	— tax collection; civil service
Sudan N	— village council
Korea	— Eup or Myun office; Gun office; Do office
Malaysia	— district office or land office; office for registering births and deaths
Philippines	— tax collection office; land registration office; office for registration of births and deaths; office of the municipal/city mayor
Mexico	— civil registration office
Egypt	— government offices with telephone; rural unit; rural social unit; combined unit
Jordan	— town council; village council; community council
Syria	— village council; rural council; elected assembly.

Thailand asked whether information from the government was available and what was the frequency of contact with community development offices, but not about the presence of any specific institutions. As for other types of institutions, Cameroon obtained the usual mode of transport and travel time, not distance, while Korea obtained both of these *and* distance, and the Philippines collected travel time and distance.

#### *Courts*

Four countries specifically asked about this institution:

Mauritania	— any court
Nigeria	— magistrate court or native court
Malaysia	— law courts
Philippines	— court with local jurisdiction.

Nigeria asked whether communities with a court had one five years ago, while the Philippines obtained the usual travel time and distance away.

#### *Co-operatives*

Sudan asked about the presence of any co-operative society, and Egypt about agricultural societies.

Bangladesh asked separately about each of the following: women's co-operative; fishermen's co-op; farm co-op; any other co-op; TIP pump group; whether any was present in the community and, if so, since when.

#### *Other institutions*

Only Sudan asked about the presence of some other institutions, and distance away if there was none. The Arab Socialist Union, any clubs, women's societies and any other societies were treated separately.

### 11.4 HEALTH FACILITIES AND HEALTH

All countries asked some questions on the subject of health (see table 23). Some general comments will be made before discussing additions to and differences from the

usual type of question. Cameroon again, as for other type of community factors discussed earlier, did not ask distance to the nearest place, but obtained instead the usual mode of transport and travel time for each facility. Nigeria, also as described before, asked whether facilities present at the time of interview existed five years ago. Sudan and Mauritania did not ask distance to the nearest place separately for each absent service, but asked only one question on distance to the closest place with some medical services. Bangladesh asked for each facility present in the community, how long it had been there. Korea and Philippines obtained, for absent facilities, not only the distance to the closest place with the facility, but also the usual type of transport and average travel time. Mexico obtained distance and average travel time but not type of transport. Egypt asked separately for doctors, midwives, nurses and in addition dentists, health workers and untrained midwives, how many were in the community and whether their services were available either daily or, if not, at least three times per week. Malaysia asked how many of each facility/professional were in the community.

#### *Hospital*

Ivory Coast and Nigeria asked separately about hospitals and maternity homes. Syria asked about the presence of either a hospital or a clinic instead of treating them separately.

#### *Health centre/clinic*

Several countries asked separately about different country-specific types of centres:

Cameroon	— complete centres; basic centres; and all other centres
Ivory Coast	— basic centres (dispensaire); other centres (centre PMI)
Mauritania	— health centres; 'poste medical'; circumscription medical'
Sudan N	— health centres; dressing stations
Thailand	— first class health centres; second class centres
Ecuador	— health centre; clinic; doctor's surgery
Peru	— health centre; clinic; 'puesto sanitario'; 'Posta medica'.

Egypt asked several additional questions where a health centre was present: in the year 1979, how many deliveries were done, how many patients visited, how many people were vaccinated against smallpox and which other villages are covered by the same health centre, obtaining the names and the 1976 population size of these villages.

#### *Doctors*

Korea asked separately about Korean doctors and western trained doctors. Bangladesh and Mexico also enquired separately about qualified and unqualified doctors. Malaysia asked separately about the presence of qualified or indigenous doctors, and obtained the number of each type. Egypt asked about doctors and dentists separately, and obtained the sex and specialization of each doctor or dentist, in addition to the frequency of services.

**Table 23** Community module: questions on health facilities and health<sup>a</sup> (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)

Country	Hospital		Health centre/ clinic		MCH clinic		Doctor		Midwife		Nurse		Pharmacy		Added questions
	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	
Cameroon	√	**	√*	**	—	—	√	**	√*	**	√	**	√	**	√
Ivory Coast	√*	√	√*	√*	√ <sup>c</sup>	√ <sup>c</sup>	√	√	√*	—	√	√	√	√	—
Mauritania	—	—	√*	**	—	—	—	—	√*	**	—	—	—	—	√
Nigeria	√*	√	√	√	—	—	—	—	√*	√	—	—	**	√	—
Sudan N	√	**	√*	**	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	√	—
Bangladesh	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√*	√*	√	—	—	√*	√	√
Korea, Rep. of	√	√*	√	√*	—	—	√*	√*	√	√*	—	—	√*	√*	√
Malaysia	√*	—	√*	—	—	—	√*	—	√*	—	—	—	√*	—	√
Pakistan	√	√	—	—	—	—	√	√	√*	√	—	—	√	√	√
Philippines	√	√*	√	√*	—	—	√	√*	√*	√*	—	—	√*	√*	√
Thailand	√	—	√*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√
Ecuador	√	—	√*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	—	—
Mexico <sup>b</sup>	√	√*	√	√*	—	—	√*	√*	√*	√*	—	—	√	√*	—
Peru	√	—	√*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	—	—
Egypt	—	—	√*	√	—	—	√*	—	√*	—	√*	—	√	—	√
Jordan	√	√	√	√	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	√	—
Syria	**	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	√	—

<sup>a</sup>P/A = Presence or absence; D = Distance to nearest if none there.

<sup>b</sup>Both urban and rural communities asked these questions.

<sup>c</sup>The 'PMI' centres can be considered as MCH clinics.

√ = Asked usual type of question.

\*\* = Asked question(s) on this topic but substantially different from other countries.

√\* = Asked for more than the usual information on this topic.



### Midwives

Again several countries distinguished between western-trained and traditional midwives – Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Bangladesh, Philippines, Mexico and Egypt. Nigeria and Pakistan asked about midwives and nurses at the same time.

### Pharmacy

Nigeria asked about a dispensary, but not a pharmacy. Korea mentioned Korean pharmacies as well as the usual type of pharmacy.

### Added questions

Cameroon and Mauritania asked about *vaccination campaigns*. Mauritania asked only the date of the last campaign and to which epidemic it had been directed. However Cameroon obtained the date and objective of three types of campaigns, the last public health campaign, last vaccination campaign and the last campaign against disease, considering either one within the community or, if none occurred within, then the closest one outside. If the campaign was outside the community, the distance away and the name of the place were also obtained. In addition Cameroon asked whether there had been any recent campaign to treat water supplies and, if so, the date and purpose. The only question asked in regard to urban communities was whether there had been any recent public health campaign and, if so, its purpose and date.

Egypt and Malaysia asked which were the most serious and most common diseases, respectively, in the community. Egypt also asked which were the most serious diseases for children under age 5, and which were the most important health problems in general. Malaysia asked the prevalence of specific diseases (malaria, tuberculosis, cholera, dengue and worm infestations): very often, often, seldom or none.

Malaysia and Korea asked about the probability of sick children receiving qualified medical care in the first week of illness, Korea coding the probability as 0, less than 10 per cent, 10–29, 30–79 and 80 per cent or more. Malaysia's codes were none, some, many, almost all. Malaysia also asked how many infants (under one year) die in a one-year period in the community. Korea asked whether people who needed medicine were more likely to get western or Korean medicine.

A few countries enquired about additional facilities or personnel:

- Bangladesh – whether any of the following had visited in the past year and, if so, how many: vaccination team; health team; sanitary inspector; malaria control; family welfare workers
- Malaysia – presence or absence of the following and, if present, how many: health visitors; any other health workers (including public health)
- Pakistan – presence or absence and, if absent, distance to the nearest one: health workers; dispensary.
- Philippines – presence or absence and, if absent, distance, average travel time and mode of transport to the nearest: barangay with service; health worker; dispensary
- Thailand – frequency of contact with: medical officers; public health officers; family health workers; mobile pharmaceutical sales teams.

## 11.5 FAMILY PLANNING SERVICES

Only nine countries asked some questions specifically on this aspect of medical services (see table 24). The general comments made in the introduction to health facilities and health (section 11.4 above) for Nigeria, Bangladesh, Korea, Philippines and Mexico also apply to the family planning facilities on which information was obtained. A few further additions or differences must also be noted, however.

Malaysia not only asked whether any family planning clinics were present in the community, but also obtained the number of such clinics. Korea asked separately about doctors who inserted loops, performed vasectomies and performed abortions. Malaysia asked about doctors, and separately about any other medical personnel who provided family planning services.

Bangladesh added to the usual services, asking whether there had been any visits in the past year from a family planning team and, if so, how many visits. Pakistan similarly asked whether there was a family planning worker who lived in the village and provided services as well as whether there was any PPO (population planning office), and if not the distance to the nearest place with each service. The Philippines also asked its usual set of questions on full-time outreach workers and barangay supply points. Mexico asked for each health facility shown in table 23, whether they offered contraceptives, and this would include midwives who are not shown in table 24. Korea asked what was the cumulative number of acceptors in the national family planning programme, and the percentage of acceptors among women under age 50. Similarly, Malaysia asked what proportion of the community used family planning: most, half, few or none.

Egypt asked only about family planning clinics, but in addition asked when people could go for services and, for each place mentioned, obtained the following: the date the place was established; methods available in 1979; methods available last month; number of visitors last month; number of pill cycles distributed in 1979 and last month; number of IUDs inserted in 1979 and last month.

## 11.6 EDUCATION

The most commonly asked questions were on the presence or absence of primary, intermediate level and secondary schools, and the distance to the closest one, if they were absent – all 17 countries asked about the presence of schools, at least. However, as shown in table 25, a few countries also asked about other types of institutions, about attendance at school, and about the educational attainment of the population of the community.

The usual comments apply here also – that Cameroon obtained travel time and type of transport, not distance; Nigeria asked whether currently present institutions existed five years before; Bangladesh, Malaysia and Egypt asked how many of each institution were there; Korea and Philippines obtained not only the distance to the closest one but also the travel time and form of transport; and Mexico obtained distance and travel time.

### Primary, intermediate and secondary schools

A few countries enquired separately about schools for boys

**Table 24** Community module: questions on availability of family planning services<sup>a</sup>

Country	Family planning clinic		With family planning services				Doctor with family planning services		Pharmacy or shop selling contraceptives		Added questions
	P/A	D	Health centre		Hospital or clinic		P/A	D	P/A	D	
			P/A	D	P/A	D					
Nigeria	√*	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Bangladesh	—	—	√*	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	√
Korea, Rep. of	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√*	√*	—	—	√
Malaysia	√*	—	—	—	√	√	√*	—	√	—	√
Pakistan	√	√	—	—	√	√	√	√	√	√	√
Philippines	√	√*	—	—	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√
Mexico <sup>b</sup>	—	—	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√
Egypt	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√
Jordan	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

<sup>a</sup>P/A = Presence or absence; D = Distance to nearest if none there.

<sup>b</sup>Both urban and rural communities asked these questions.

√ = Asked usual type of question.

√\* = Asked for more than the usual information on this topic.

and girls. Sudan, Bangladesh, Pakistan and Jordan asked separately about male, female and mixed schools, for secondary and lower levels. Pakistan also did so for 'colleges' (ie university level), while Egypt did so for the preparatory (ie intermediate) and secondary levels only.

A few countries asked separately about different types of secondary level schools:

Cameroon	— rural or manual training school; agricultural school
Nigeria	— secondary or teacher training schools; commercial, or vocational or trade schools
Sudan	— secondary; senior secondary; technical college
Ecuador	— any secondary; HHMM; agricultural; business or commercial; trade or mechanical.

Those countries which asked about any other types of school, and obtained the type, could have obtained some information on separate training schools of this kind (Cameroon, Mauritania, Pakistan, Philippines and Mexico).

Cameroon made a different type of distinction, asking separately about public, private denominational and private non-denominational schools at the primary and secondary levels.

#### Literacy

Ecuador simply asked about the presence of a literacy centre, but Egypt asked not only if there was an adult literacy programme, but also when it was started, and how many males and females attended the 1979/80 class.

#### Educational attendance

Only three countries asked about this subject. Korea obtained the number of boys and girls attending each level of school, and the total number in the corresponding age groups: primary (ages 6–11), middle (ages 12–14), high school (ages 15–17) and college (ages 18–21). Malaysia asked what proportion of those who could go to primary and secondary school were attending, coding the answer

as most, a few, none. Egypt obtained the numbers of boys and girls attending each of three levels of schooling in 1979: primary, preparatory and secondary. Egypt also obtained the number of teachers, males and females separately, for each level of school.

#### Educational attainment

These same three countries asked about the level of educational attainment in the community. Korea asked what was the proportion of adults (males and females separately) over age 20 who could write letters; could read newspapers; had completed or partially completed primary, middle and high school. Korea also obtained the number of residents, male and female, and the proportion, who completed college. Malaysia simply asked what was the average educational level — secondary, primary, religious or no schooling. Egypt obtained the educational composition of the population over age 10 by sex from 1976 census, with the categories being: illiterate; read and write; primary; less than intermediate; intermediate; over intermediate; less than university; university degree or more.

#### 11.7 AGRICULTURE

Only ten of the 17 countries asked questions on this topic, and there was wide variation in the specific issues addressed. Although an attempt at broad classification is made in table 26, in most cases the questions asked by countries on any particular topic differ. We will discuss each topic in turn.

#### Labour force composition

Korea obtained the occupational composition of households in the community and also the percentage of the male and female population aged 15 and over who are in agriculture. Malaysia asked the proportion of the population aged 15–64 who were in agricultural and non-agricultural activities. Egypt obtained from the 1976 census the distribution by sex of the population over age 6, by economic activity,

**Table 25** Community module: questions on education<sup>a</sup> (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)

Country	Primary		Intermediate		Secondary		University		Literacy centre		Koranic school		Any other schools		Educational attendance	Educational attainment
	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D	P/A	D		
Cameroon	√*	**	√*	**	√*	**	-	-	-	-	√	**	√	**	-	-
Ivory Coast	√	√	-	-	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Mauritania	√	√	-	-	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	-	-
Nigeria	√*	√	-	-	√*	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sudan N	√*	√	-	-	√*	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bangladesh	√*	√	-	-	√*	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Korea, Rep. of	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	√
Malaysia	√*	√	-	-	√*	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	√
Pakistan	√*	√	-	-	√*	√	√*	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	-	-
Philippines	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	√*	-	-
Thailand	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ecuador	√	-	-	-	√*	-	√	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Mexico <sup>b</sup>	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	-	-	-	√	√*	-	-
Peru	√	-	-	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	√*	-	-
Egypt	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	-	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	√	√
Jordan	√*	√	√*	√	√*	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Syria	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

<sup>a</sup>P/A = Presence or absence; D = Distance to nearest if none there.

<sup>b</sup>Both urban and rural communities asked these questions.

√ = Asked usual type of question.

\*\* = Asked question(s) on this topic but substantially different from other countries.

√\* = Asked for more than the usual information on this topic.

**Table 26** Community module: questions on agriculture (only rural communities eligible for these questions)

Country	Labour force composition	Land ownership	Size of holding	Main crops	Proportion of produce sold/consumed	Marketing	Aspects of development					Total area of arable land	Average wages	Veterinary centre	
							Irrigation	Fertilizer	Insecticides	New seeds	Mechanical equipment				Source of advice
Cameroon	-	-	-	√	-	-	-	√	√	-	√	-	-	-	√
Mauritania	**	-	-	√	√	-	-	√	√	-	√	-	-	-	-
Bangladesh	-	√	√	√	-	√	√	√	√	-	√	-	-	-	-
Korea, Rep. of	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	√	√	-	√	√	-	-	-
Malaysia	√	√	√	√	√	-	√	√	-	-	√	√	√	-	-
Pakistan	-	-	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	√	-	√
Thailand	-	√	√	√	-	√	√	√	-	-	√	√	-	-	-
Ecuador	**	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Mexico	√	√	-	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	-
Peru	**	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Egypt	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	-	√	√	-

√ = Asked usual type of question.

√\* = Asked for more than the usual information on this topic.

\*\* = Asked question(s) on this topic but substantially different from other countries.

and of the population over age 15 by occupation. Mexico obtained for urban and rural areas, the main economic activity of the community and the distribution of the economically active population into three major groups, not the more usual eight to ten group breakdown. Mauritania asked which were the predominant economic activities, allowing more than one type, while Ecuador and Peru asked what was the single most important economic activity.

#### *Land ownership*

By asking how many families owned farms of particular sizes, Bangladesh indirectly obtained the proportion who owned some land and those who owned none. Korea specially asked what proportion of the population in agriculture were owners, tenants and labourers, separately for men and women. Malaysia asked whether most owned land or were employees. Mexico obtained the distribution of the area according to private, 'ejido' or communal ownership, and the number of persons in each of these categories. Egypt asked the number of landholders in the village.

Thailand obtained the percentage of farmers who rent land for cultivation, either as a specific proportion or a rough estimate (small, moderate, large). In addition, other questions on land ownership were asked:

- whether there is buying and selling of land for industrial usage.
- the inheritance pattern, the means by which land is passed on.
- whether land can be obtained in the vicinity of this area, and the means of doing so.
- the price of land, either an absolute price per unit of land or the price relative to an earlier time.

#### *Size of holdings*

Bangladesh asked how many families owned farms of less than 2, 2–5, 5–7 and 7 or more acres, while Egypt asked what percent of holdings were less than 5, 5–10, 10–20 and 20 or more feddans. Korea, Malaysia and Thailand asked the size of the average holding.

#### *Crops*

Cameroon asked which crops were grown and whether they were exported or not. For communities where agriculture was the main activity (rather than animal herding, fishing, manufacturing, etc) Mauritania asked which were the main crops. Bangladesh asked, for some specified crops (rice, jute, sugar cane, pulses, tobacco) and for any other important ones in that particular community, the following questions: whether it was grown there, if it was a single planting season and the area under that crop. If the crop had multiple plantings in a year (common for rice, especially), the season and the area under the crop for each season were obtained. Korea obtained the list of main crops and the area under each, as well as the proportion of arable land for each. The percentage of cultivated land which is paddy and dry field was also obtained. Malaysia obtained a list of all major activities, including crops and other non-agricultural activities. Pakistan asked for a list of the main crops and their average produce per year. Thailand asked for up to four main crops, ranking them in the order of importance, classifying crops in very fine detail. The most important crop grown in summer was also obtained, and

the existence and number of each type of livestock was also collected (water buffalo, pigs, cattle, ducks, chickens, and any other type). Egypt obtained a list of major crops, the area under each in 1978/79, and also asked whether there were any fruit gardens, how many and their total area.

#### *Produce sold or consumed*

Mauritania asked a general question, covering whatever was the main produce of the area, on whether it was mainly consumed locally or marketed or used for some other purpose. Malaysia asked whether the produce was mostly sold (presumably to people outside the community) or mainly consumed within the community. Mexico asked the question slightly differently, asking the proportion of produce consumed by the farmers themselves, and the proportion which was sold.

#### *Marketing*

Bangladesh asked where villages usually sell their crops and, if it was not within the village, then the distance from the village was obtained. The same questions were also asked about where agricultural inputs and consumer goods were obtained. Thailand asked whether there was any market for agricultural products only, and any private company for selling agricultural products.

#### *Aspects of development*

Only three countries asked about irrigation. Bangladesh asked separately about deep tube wells, shallow tube wells, low lift pumps and any other forms of irrigation: whether there were any in the community, how many, the year the first was installed and whether they were used in the last season. Malaysia asked whether the land was mostly irrigated or not. Thailand asked whether an irrigation project was in the planning stage for this village, coding answers as: request made, awaiting reply; under construction in process; have come to do the survey; there is one less than five kilometres away; only canal dug by villagers is available; have one already; and have none. Where an irrigation system was available, the proportion of farms covered was also asked.

Cameroon, Bangladesh and Malaysia asked what proportion used chemical fertilizers, while Cameroon also asked about natural fertilizers. Mauritania only asked if fertilizer was used or not. Thailand asked about the use of chemical fertilizer in the community, coding the answer as it was given, either in terms of frequency of use or as an approximate proportion of households who used. Cameroon, Bangladesh and Korea asked what proportion used insecticides. Cameroon also asked separately about pesticides, and enquired whether there had been a recent campaign of eradication and, if so, its purpose.

Mauritania asked whether any new seeds had been tried in the last five years, while Bangladesh simply asked how many cultivators had tried out new seeds, by implication, at any time. Korea asked what proportion had planted new rice seeds, while Malaysia asked whether new seeds and new ideas were implemented immediately, after some time or after a long time.

Six countries asked about the use of mechanical or powered equipment:

- Cameroon — the proportion who used motor-powered machines; animal powered equipment; and manually operated equipment

- Mauritania – what sort of machinery was used by the community
- Korea – the proportion who have powered equipment
- Malaysia – the proportion who use mechanical farm equipment
- Thailand – the use of mechanical equipment, coding the types of machinery; and if not usually used, whether rented occasionally in combination with use of the water buffalo and human labour
- Egypt – how many agricultural tractors and mechanical water pumps were in the village.

Availability of trained personnel to advise farmers was also ascertained by five countries:

- Bangladesh – whether an agricultural assistant visited in the past year and if so, how many visits were made in that year
- Korea – whether agricultural extension workers visit, how frequently and what proportion of farmers received advice from them
- Malaysia – whether contact with agricultural extension workers or any other development workers was often, sometimes or none
- Pakistan – whether any agricultural workers, agents or development workers provided advice for the community and, if so, whether they visited regularly or occasionally; also whether any ABDP branch or representative was in that area and, if so, how many loans were given last year, and the purpose of the loans

- Thailand – frequency of contact with agricultural officers; and with people who sell fertilizers.

#### Average wages

Malaysia and Mexico asked the average income of an agricultural worker, while Egypt obtained the average income of men, women and children separately, and also the average number of hours worked for each, for full-time workers.

#### Veterinary centre

Pakistan asked about the presence of a veterinary hospital and, if there was none, the distance to the closest. Cameroon asked about the presence of a centre for animals, and, if there was none, the travel time and mode of transport to the closest. Cameroon also asked if there had been a recent campaign to treat animals and, if so, its date and purpose.

#### Added topics

Only Thailand asked questions on other subjects. The availability of and accessibility to rice mills was questioned, coding the size and number of mills. The condition of the soil was also obtained, the answers ranging widely, from its general type, clay, sandy, etc; or whether it was good, moderate, dry, depleted or hilly, etc; and combinations of some parts being good and other parts not so. Finally a question was also asked on the existence of hired farm workers, and the proportion present was coded as small, moderate or large.

### 11.8 ASPECTS OF DEVELOPMENT

Fourteen of the 17 countries asked some questions on various aspects of 'modernization' of the community, with electricity and water supply being the most commonly addressed topics (see table 27). However several other topics were covered by a minority of countries as well.

**Table 27** Community module: questions on various aspects of development of the community (except where otherwise footnoted, only rural communities surveyed)

Country	Elec- tricity	Water supply	Drainage	Sewage	Garbage	Housing	Manufacturing industries		Employ- ment outside	Market, shops, other services
							P/A <sup>a</sup>	Kind		
Cameroon <sup>b</sup> U	✓	✓	–	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–	✓
R	✓	✓	–	✓	✓	–	–	–	✓	✓
Mauritania	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	✓	–	–	–
Nigeria	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Sudan N	✓	✓	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–
Bangladesh	✓	✓	–	✓	–	✓	–	✓	✓	✓
Korea, Rep. of	✓	–	–	–	–	✓	✓	–	✓	–
Malaysia	✓	✓	✓	–	✓	–	✓	–	–	–
Pakistan	–	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Philippines	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Thailand	✓	–	–	–	–	–	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ecuador	✓	✓	–	✓	–	✓	–	–	–	✓
Mexico <sup>b</sup>	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Peru	✓	✓	✓	–	–	✓	–	–	–	✓
Egypt	✓	✓	–	–	–	–	–	✓	–	✓

<sup>a</sup>P/A = Presence or absence.

<sup>b</sup>Both urban and rural communities surveyed.

✓ = Asked question(s) on this topic.

### *Electricity*

Some countries simply asked if any household in the community had electricity – Cameroon, Mauritania, Sudan, Philippines and Thailand. Several others obtained the percentage or the number of households who had electricity – Bangladesh, Korea, Malaysia, Ecuador, Mexico and Peru. Nigeria asked about the existence of electricity in the community, and where it was present, whether it had been there five years ago or, if absent, then the distance to the closest place with electricity was asked. Egypt asked if there was any; if there was none, then the distance to the closest source was obtained.

### *Water supply*

Three countries asked only if piped running water was available in the community – Mauritania, Nigeria and Egypt. As usual, Nigeria and Egypt asked the distance to the nearest place with piped water, if the community had none, and Nigeria also asked those which had a supply whether it was available five years ago. A few other countries – Bangladesh, Ecuador, Mexico and Peru – obtained the percentage or the number of households with running water supply, while Sudan obtained the main source of water supply, and Malaysia asked whether the main source was piped water or some other type.

Cameroon, Pakistan and Philippines obtained a list of all sources of water supply in the community:

- Cameroon – *urban areas*: source of drinking water – running water; well; fountain; others  
– *rural areas*: source of drinking water – river; spring; well; pool; delivery from town. And the means of obtaining the water – by tap; motor pump; hand pump; manually; other
- Pakistan – sources of drinking and cooking water – wells; tube wells; hand pump; canal; pond; other; and which ones mostly used
- Philippines – separately for cooking and drinking water sources – pipe water; artesian well; pump; open well; rainwater; spring; other.

### *Drainage*

Only three countries asked about this topic. Malaysia asked if there was any public system of drainage for waste in the community, while Mexico and Peru asked what percentage of households had some form of drainage.

### *Sewage*

Four countries asked about this topic, using different questions. Cameroon asked what types of toilets were available in the community, for both urban (open air, private, pit, flush, other) and rural areas (open air, river, private pit, latrine, other). Sudan asked which was the most common type in the community – flush, tank, pitlet or some other type. Bangladesh asked how many households had a sanitary latrine, and Ecuador asked what percentage of households had provision for sewage.

### *Garbage*

Only Cameroon and Malaysia asked about this subject. Cameroon enquired about all means of disposing garbage available in the community, for urban areas (individuals

who collect garbage; municipal collection; dump; private hole; other) and rural areas (the urban types plus community trench/pit; burning, river). Malaysia asked whether there was any central agency for collecting garbage regularly.

### *Housing*

A few countries asked about the condition of houses (Bangladesh and Korea) or about the type of materials used for building (Cameroon, Ecuador and Peru). Bangladesh asked how many houses had corrugated roofs, while Korea asked what percentage of households had their roof repaired since 1970. Cameroon asked for urban areas only, what types of housing were found in the community, classifying by the durability of the building. Ecuador and Peru asked what was the most common type of material used: brick, adobe, wood, and materials such as cane, bamboo and thatching.

### *Manufacturing industries*

Mauritania and Thailand asked if there were any industrial firms/factories in the community, and Thailand also coded the type of product being manufactured, or, if there were several, coded the answer as 'many factories'. Bangladesh asked about the presence of each of several types of mills (rice, cotton, jute, wheat), and any other industry. Korea and Malaysia asked if there was any business using mechanical power and employing more than ten persons in the community. If there were none, the distance to the nearest such place outside the community was obtained. Malaysia also asked how many such firms were in the community, and what proportion of the community worked in such establishments – many, a few, or none. Korea asked what percentage of the labour force over age 15 worked in any such business.

Egypt obtained comparable information with Korea and Malaysia, asking how many industrial firms were in the village, the names and types of activities, and the number of workers, male and female, employed there. If there were no industries within the village, the distance to the nearest industrial area and its name, as well as the number of men and women from this village who worked there, were obtained.

### *Employment outside community*

Five countries asked questions relating to this topic, but using different questions. For rural areas only, Cameroon asked whether some people travelled far to their work, and whether such movement was seasonal. If it was seasonal, the reason and the number of workers involved, allowing up to 2 reasons, were obtained. In addition, Cameroon asked if there was a traditional pattern of migration for long periods and, if so, its reason and the number of workers. Taking a similar approach, Korea asked the number and the proportion of the labour force who commuted to work outside, and who worked for a long period of time outside the community. Bangladesh asked, separately for agricultural and non-agricultural work, how many people worked away from the village, during the last 12 months, distinguishing between those who worked for the whole year or part of the year. From the opposite perspective, Bangladesh also asked the same questions for people from outside the village working within the village. Thailand asked only what proportion of young men worked outside the community.

### *Markets and other services*

Cameroon enquired about the presence of a market in both urban and rural areas. If there was none the distance to the closest was ascertained for urban areas, and the usual form of transport and travel time for rural areas. The frequency of the market in rural areas was also obtained.

Bangladesh asked about the presence of several social centres and, if they were absent, the distance to the closest place with that type of service was obtained: tea shop, guest house, youth club, community centre and mosque. Thailand asked about the presence in the community of a grocery store and a temple. Ecuador and Peru asked about the presence of each of following – shop, market, bazaar or fair, and parks. Ecuador also asked about sports centre/grounds. Egypt asked if there was a bakery in the community and, if not, the distance to the closest one.

## 11.9 OTHER TOPICS

### *Religion*

Cameroon asked, for rural communities only, whether there were any Protestant missions, Catholic missions or a mosque, in the community, and, if there were none, the usual form of transport and travel time to the nearest one. The Ivory Coast enquired how many religions were practised in the community, and what were the two most important ones. Bangladesh asked an open-ended question on how central religion was to the community, whether it influenced behaviour, and how many mosques or temples there were. Malaysia obtained the distribution of the community by type of religion. Korea asked, for each of several religions (Protestant, Catholic, Buddhist, Chundo-gyo, and any other types) the following items: whether there was a church or temple in the community; if there was none, the distance to the nearest; the number of people in each religion; and the percentage of adults belonging to each religion. Questions were also asked on whether there were any shrines for ancestor worship, whether the community held rituals to pray for the property of the community or to worship shamanistic gods, and on the frequency of 'moodang good' rituals in the community.

### *Ethnicity/Language*

Cameroon obtained the percentage who spoke each language, for urban areas only, and for both urban and rural areas a list of households, giving the main language of the household, mother tongue of wife (wives), and other Cameroonian languages spoken by the wife (wives). Ivory Coast asked which ethnic groups were represented in the community, and which were the most important ones. Malaysia obtained the distribution of the population by ethnicity.

### *Social groups*

Korea asked which were the major family clans in the neighbourhood, the number of households belonging to each and their proportion of the total population. In addition questions were asked on the degree of activity of the Saemaul movement, and of mothers' clubs, coding replies on a five-point scale.

Bangladesh asked separately about the characteristics of two levels of social groups, 'samaj' and 'matbars'. The

religion, number of families and number of 'matbars' in each 'samaj' were obtained. Characteristics of each 'matbar' were also asked – age, education, occupation, landownership, UC membership, UC chairmanship and their number of children. A question was asked on the existence of open conflict between 'samaj', and further open-ended questions probed about whether one or more groups dominated and, if so, which groups, how strongly, and in what activities.

Bangladesh further asked open-ended questions on how well organized were youth activities, and whether there were any law and order problems in the community, such as murders, robbery or violence.

### *Migration*

Korea asked how many households had moved out and moved into the community in the past one-year period, and obtained the general duration and origin of movers, coding the sources as: from other village within the same Eup, Myeon; from other village in different Eup, Myeon; from different Eup; and from cities.

Thailand asked about the types of changes in village size which had occurred in the past ten years, coding replies into two variables. The first indicates the amount of change (ranging from none to a great deal), and the second codes answers as they were given, in terms of population size, other aspects of social and economic changes, in-and-out migration and so on.

### *Census and registration data*

It was noted earlier in the discussion on education and agriculture that some census data on these topics was obtained. Egypt and Korea both obtained the five-year age-sex distribution of the population of each community, for the year of the survey in Korea (1974) and for the year of the most recent census in Egypt (1976). Egypt also separated out children under one year. Korea obtained the population count in 1970 and 1974 to get a measure of recent population change.

Egypt also collected the marital status distribution of the population, by sex. In addition the number of births and deaths registered in each of the years 1976, 1977, 1978, 1979 were obtained from the registration records of the village. Finally the number of infant deaths up to 11 months, and at exactly one year of age, by sex, were obtained for the four years 1976–1979. The names of all hamlets whose births and deaths were registered in the village's record were also kept.

### *Consumer items*

Nigeria asked which of the following consumer items were available in the community, and if they were not available, the distance to the closest source for each: pencils, kerosene, salt, soap, razor blades, aspirin, sugar, powdered milk and newspapers.

### *Skilled tradesmen*

Bangladesh alone asked whether the following tradesmen were in the village and, if not, the distance to the nearest one outside: grocer, blacksmith, carpenter, tailor, barber, potter, mechanic, boatman, fisherman and weaver.

### *Natural disasters*

Bangladesh asked, for each type of disaster which occurred

since five years before (bad floods, cyclone or tornado, bad famine, bad drought, epidemics, specifying what kind), the approximate number of deaths which resulted and the approximate number of families who moved away permanently as a result.

**Traditional customs concerning breastfeeding, abstinence, contraception, abortion and female circumcision**

Only Ivory Coast asked questions on these topics, and the questions were addressed to a midwife of the village, and asked in three groups:

*Group 1*

- Weaning — at what age in general does this take place; is there a ceremony to mark the occasion?  
Breastfeeding — any reasons for cutting short breastfeeding?; which ones?; any reasons for prolonging breastfeeding?; which ones?  
Post-partum abstinence — the average duration.

Midwives were also asked whether answers to this group of

questions applied to the whole village or only a particular ethnic group, and if the latter, which group.

*Group 2*

Contraception and abortion, separately: Any traditional methods used in this village? If so, description of each requested; which ones are most frequently used. Whether these answers applied to the whole village or to a particular ethnic group, and if the latter, which group

*Group 3*

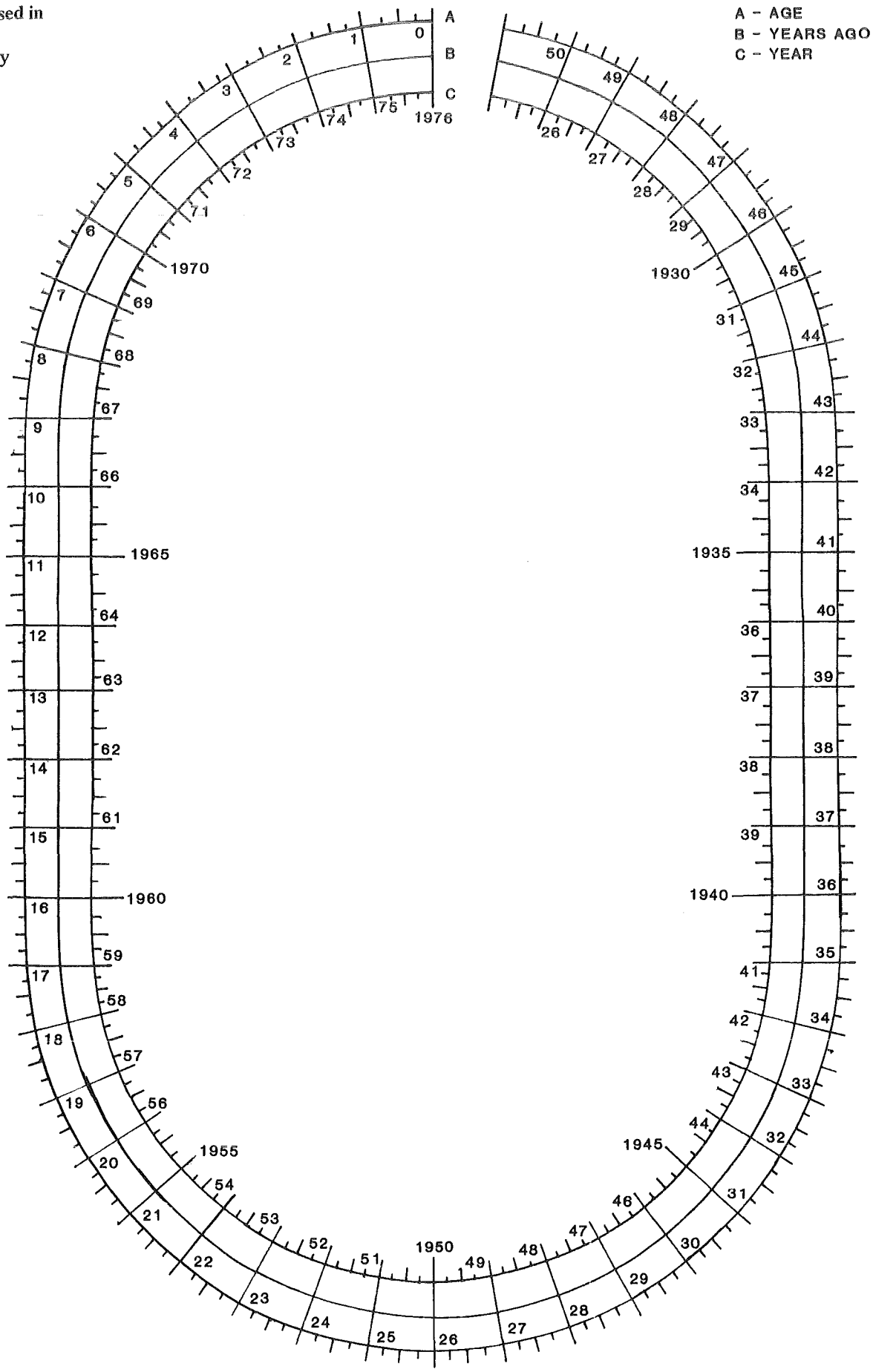
Female circumcision: If the midwife had heard of this practice, the following questions were asked:

- Is this practice important for childbearing? If so, why? If not, then what is its function?
- Are there any circumcised women in this village? If yes: Is it a common practice? At what age in general is it done? Is there a ceremony to mark the circumcision? Who carries out the ceremony? Does this practice apply to the whole village or only a particular ethnic group, and if the latter, which group?



Appendix A—Aids to Dating Events

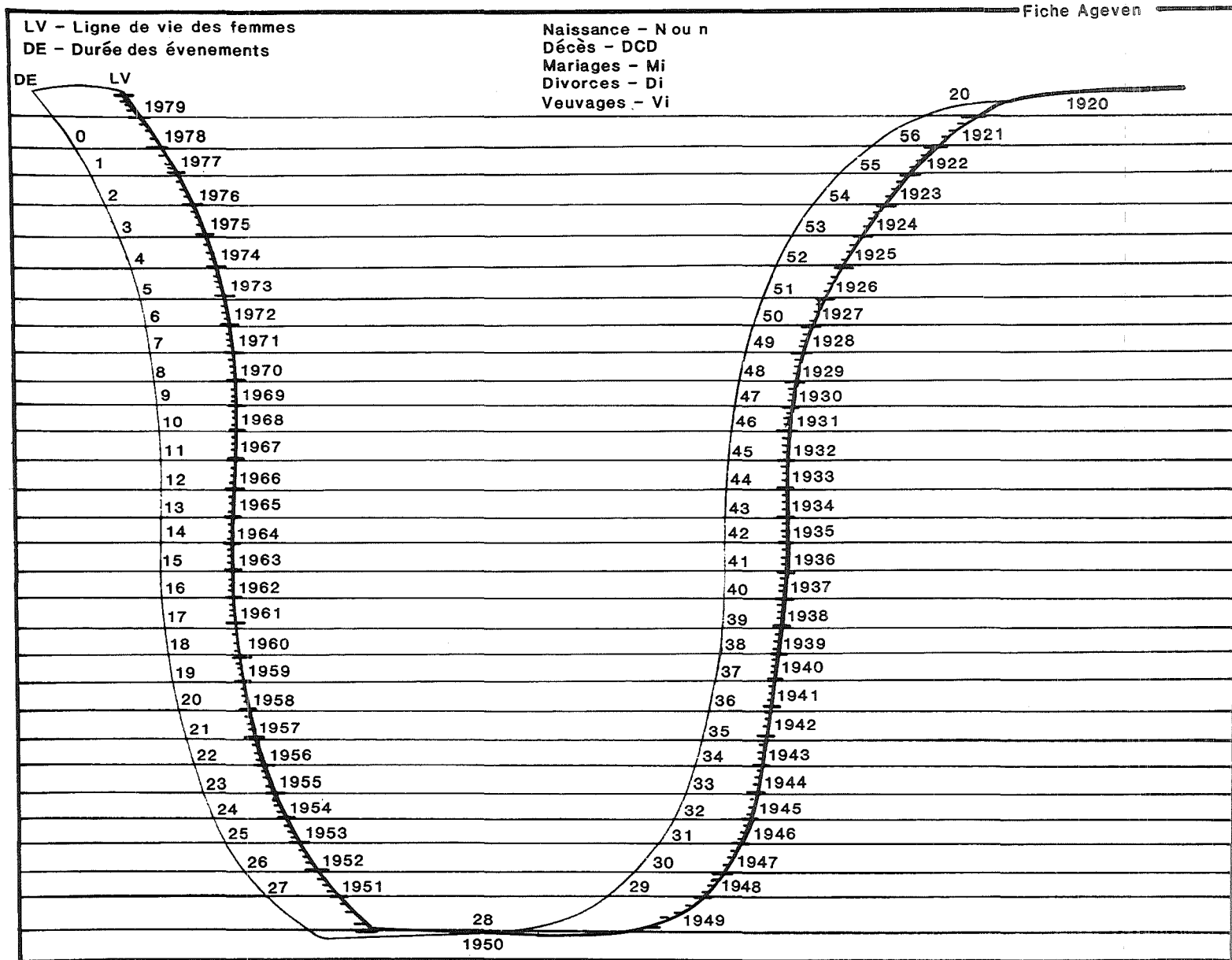
Events chart used in  
the Indonesia  
Fertility Survey



Date-event chart used in the Nigeria Fertility Survey

25				25
26	1955	1956	1957	24
27	1954		1958	23
28	1953		1959	22
29	1952		1960	21
30	1951		1961	20
31	1950		1962	19
32	1949		1963	18
33	1948		1964	17
34	1947		1965	16
35	1946		1966	15
36	1945		1967	14
37	1944		1968	13
38	1943		1969	12
39	1942		1970	11
40	1941		1971	10
41	1940		1972	9
42	1939		1973	8
43	1938		1974	7
44	1937		1975	6
45	1936		1976	5
46	1935		1977	4
47	1934		1978	3
48	1933		1979	2
49	1932		1980	1
50	1931		1981	0
			1982	

Age-event chart (fiche ageven) used in the Senegal Fertility Survey



## Cameroon: Months and Seasons in Wolof

The following lists give the lunar months and the seasons in Wolof with their approximate equivalent according to the Catholic calendar

### MONTHS

<b>Tamxarit</b>	December 76–January 77
<b>Digi gamu</b>	January 77–February 77
<b>Gamu</b>	February 77–March 77
<b>Raki gamu</b>	March 77–April 77
<b>Rakaati gamu</b>	April 77–May 77
<b>Maamu koor</b>	May 77–June 77
<b>Ndeyu koor</b>	June 77–July 77
<b>Baraxlu</b>	July 77–August 77
<b>Koor</b>	August 77–September 77
<b>Kori</b>	September 77–October 77
<b>Digi tabaski</b>	October 77–November 77
<b>Tabaski</b>	November 77–December 77
<b>Tamxarit</b>	December 77–January 78
<b>Digi gamu</b>	January 78–February 78
<b>Gamu</b>	February 78–March 78
<b>Raki gamu</b>	March 78–April 78
<b>Rakaati gamu</b>	April 78–May 78

### SEASONS

<b>Loli</b>	October November December
<b>Noor</b>	December January February March April
<b>Cooroon</b>	April May June
<b>Nave</b>	June July August September October

